



# THE **BLACK ART** OF **XBOX<sup>®</sup> MODS**

Jonathan Harbour

*SAMS*

# Black Art of Xbox Mods, The (2005)(Sams Publishing)

1. [Black Art of Xbox Mods, The \(2005\)\(Sams Publishing\)](#)

## Pages

1. [0](#)
2. [1](#)
3. [2](#)
4. [3](#)
5. [4](#)
6. [5](#)
7. [6](#)
8. [7](#)
9. [8](#)
10. [9](#)
11. [10](#)
12. [11](#)
13. [12](#)
14. [13](#)
15. [14](#)
16. [15](#)
17. [16](#)
18. [17](#)
19. [18](#)
20. [19](#)
21. [21](#)
22. [22](#)
23. [23](#)
24. [24](#)
25. [25](#)
26. [26](#)
27. [27](#)



28. [28](#)
29. [29](#)
30. [30](#)
31. [31](#)
32. [32](#)
33. [33](#)
34. [34](#)
35. [35](#)
36. [36](#)
37. [37](#)
38. [38](#)
39. [39](#)
40. [40](#)
41. [41](#)
42. [42](#)
43. [43](#)
44. [44](#)
45. [45](#)
46. [46](#)
47. [47](#)
48. [48](#)
49. [49](#)
50. [50](#)
51. [51](#)
52. [52](#)
53. [53](#)
54. [54](#)
55. [55](#)
56. [56](#)
57. [57](#)
58. [58](#)
59. [59](#)
60. [60](#)
61. [61](#)
62. [62](#)
63. [63](#)
64. [64](#)
65. [65](#)
66. [66](#)
67. [67](#)

68.	<a href="#">68</a>
69.	<a href="#">69</a>
70.	<a href="#">70</a>
71.	<a href="#">71</a>
72.	<a href="#">72</a>
73.	<a href="#">73</a>
74.	<a href="#">74</a>
75.	<a href="#">75</a>
76.	<a href="#">76</a>
77.	<a href="#">77</a>
78.	<a href="#">78</a>
79.	<a href="#">79</a>
80.	<a href="#">80</a>
81.	<a href="#">81</a>
82.	<a href="#">83</a>
83.	<a href="#">84</a>
84.	<a href="#">85</a>
85.	<a href="#">86</a>
86.	<a href="#">87</a>
87.	<a href="#">88</a>
88.	<a href="#">89</a>
89.	<a href="#">90</a>
90.	<a href="#">91</a>
91.	<a href="#">92</a>
92.	<a href="#">93</a>
93.	<a href="#">94</a>
94.	<a href="#">95</a>
95.	<a href="#">96</a>
96.	<a href="#">97</a>
97.	<a href="#">98</a>
98.	<a href="#">99</a>
99.	<a href="#">100</a>
100.	<a href="#">101</a>
101.	<a href="#">102</a>
102.	<a href="#">103</a>
103.	<a href="#">104</a>
104.	<a href="#">105</a>
105.	<a href="#">106</a>
106.	<a href="#">107</a>
107.	<a href="#">108</a>

108. [109](#)  
109. [110](#)  
110. [111](#)  
111. [113](#)  
112. [114](#)  
113. [115](#)  
114. [116](#)  
115. [117](#)  
116. [118](#)  
117. [119](#)  
118. [120](#)  
119. [121](#)  
120. [122](#)  
121. [123](#)  
122. [124](#)  
123. [125](#)  
124. [126](#)  
125. [127](#)  
126. [128](#)  
127. [129](#)  
128. [130](#)  
129. [131](#)  
130. [132](#)  
131. [133](#)  
132. [134](#)  
133. [135](#)  
134. [136](#)  
135. [137](#)  
136. [138](#)  
137. [139](#)  
138. [140](#)  
139. [141](#)  
140. [143](#)  
141. [144](#)  
142. [145](#)  
143. [146](#)  
144. [147](#)  
145. [148](#)  
146. [149](#)  
147. [150](#)

148. [151](#)  
149. [152](#)  
150. [153](#)  
151. [154](#)  
152. [155](#)  
153. [156](#)  
154. [157](#)  
155. [158](#)  
156. [159](#)  
157. [160](#)  
158. [161](#)  
159. [162](#)  
160. [163](#)  
161. [164](#)  
162. [165](#)  
163. [166](#)  
164. [167](#)  
165. [168](#)  
166. [169](#)  
167. [170](#)  
168. [171](#)  
169. [172](#)  
170. [173](#)  
171. [174](#)  
172. [175](#)  
173. [176](#)  
174. [177](#)  
175. [178](#)  
176. [179](#)  
177. [180](#)  
178. [181](#)  
179. [182](#)  
180. [183](#)  
181. [184](#)  
182. [185](#)  
183. [186](#)  
184. [187](#)  
185. [188](#)  
186. [189](#)  
187. [190](#)

188.	<a href="#">191</a>
189.	<a href="#">193</a>
190.	<a href="#">194</a>
191.	<a href="#">195</a>
192.	<a href="#">196</a>
193.	<a href="#">197</a>
194.	<a href="#">198</a>
195.	<a href="#">199</a>
196.	<a href="#">200</a>
197.	<a href="#">201</a>
198.	<a href="#">202</a>
199.	<a href="#">203</a>
200.	<a href="#">204</a>
201.	<a href="#">205</a>
202.	<a href="#">206</a>
203.	<a href="#">207</a>
204.	<a href="#">208</a>
205.	<a href="#">209</a>
206.	<a href="#">210</a>
207.	<a href="#">211</a>
208.	<a href="#">212</a>
209.	<a href="#">213</a>
210.	<a href="#">214</a>
211.	<a href="#">215</a>
212.	<a href="#">216</a>
213.	<a href="#">217</a>
214.	<a href="#">218</a>
215.	<a href="#">219</a>
216.	<a href="#">221</a>
217.	<a href="#">222</a>
218.	<a href="#">223</a>
219.	<a href="#">224</a>
220.	<a href="#">225</a>
221.	<a href="#">226</a>
222.	<a href="#">227</a>
223.	<a href="#">228</a>
224.	<a href="#">229</a>
225.	<a href="#">230</a>
226.	<a href="#">231</a>
227.	<a href="#">232</a>

228. [233](#)  
229. [234](#)  
230. [235](#)  
231. [236](#)  
232. [237](#)  
233. [238](#)  
234. [239](#)  
235. [240](#)  
236. [241](#)  
237. [242](#)  
238. [243](#)  
239. [244](#)  
240. [245](#)  
241. [247](#)  
242. [248](#)  
243. [249](#)  
244. [250](#)  
245. [251](#)  
246. [252](#)  
247. [253](#)  
248. [254](#)  
249. [255](#)  
250. [256](#)  
251. [257](#)  
252. [258](#)  
253. [259](#)  
254. [260](#)  
255. [261](#)  
256. [262](#)  
257. [263](#)  
258. [264](#)  
259. [265](#)  
260. [266](#)  
261. [267](#)  
262. [268](#)  
263. [269](#)  
264. [270](#)  
265. [271](#)  
266. [272](#)  
267. [273](#)

268. [274](#)  
269. [275](#)  
270. [276](#)  
271. [277](#)  
272. [278](#)  
273. [279](#)  
274. [280](#)  
275. [281](#)  
276. [282](#)  
277. [283](#)  
278. [284](#)  
279. [285](#)  
280. [286](#)  
281. [287](#)  
282. [288](#)  
283. [289](#)  
284. [290](#)  
285. [291](#)  
286. [292](#)  
287. [293](#)  
288. [294](#)  
289. [295](#)  
290. [296](#)  
291. [297](#)  
292. [298](#)  
293. [299](#)  
294. [300](#)  
295. [301](#)  
296. [303](#)  
297. [304](#)  
298. [305](#)  
299. [306](#)  
300. [307](#)  
301. [308](#)  
302. [309](#)  
303. [310](#)  
304. [311](#)  
305. [312](#)  
306. [313](#)  
307. [315](#)



- 308. [316](#)
- 309. [317](#)
- 310. [318](#)
- 311. [319](#)
- 312. [320](#)
- 313. [321](#)
- 314. [322](#)
- 315. [323](#)
- 316. [324](#)
- 317. [325](#)
- 318. [326](#)
- 319. [327](#)
- 320. [328](#)
- 321. [329](#)
- 322. [330](#)
- 323. [331](#)
- 324. [332](#)

# **Black Art of Xbox Mods, The (2005)(Sams Publishing)**

This book was produced in EPUB format by the Internet Archive.

The book pages were scanned and converted to EPUB format automatically. This process relies on optical character recognition, and is somewhat susceptible to errors. The book may not offer the correct reading sequence, and there may be weird characters, non-words, and incorrect guesses at structure. Some page numbers and headers or footers may remain from the scanned page. The process which identifies images might have found stray marks on the page which are not actually images from the book. The hidden page numbering which may be available to your ereader corresponds to the numbered pages in the print edition, but is not an exact match; page numbers will increment at the same rate as the corresponding print edition, but we may have started numbering before the print book's visible page numbers. The Internet Archive is working to improve the scanning process and resulting books, but in the meantime, we hope that this book will be useful to you.

The Internet Archive was founded in 1996 to build an Internet library and to promote universal access to all knowledge. The Archive's purposes include offering permanent access for researchers, historians, scholars, people with disabilities, and the general public to historical collections that exist in digital format. The Internet Archive includes texts, audio, moving images, and software as well as archived web pages, and provides specialized services for information access for the blind and other persons with disabilities.

Jonathan S. Harbour

OF,

1



i



SAMS

800 East 96th Street, Indianapolis, Indiana 46240

The Black Art of Xbox Mods

Copyright © 2005 by Sams Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without written permission from the publisher. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher and author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Nor is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

International Standard Book Number: 0-672-32683-3

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 2004095063

Printed in the United States of America

First Printing: December 2004

07 06 05 04 4 3 2 1

Trademarks

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Sams Publishing cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

Warning and Disclaimer

Every effort has been made to make this book as complete and as accurate as possible, but no warranty of fitness is implied. The information provided is on an "as is" basis. The author and the publisher shall have neither liability nor responsibility to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damages arising from the information contained in this book.

Bulk Sales

Sams Publishing offers excellent discounts on this book when ordered in quantity for bulk purchases or special sales. For more information, please contact

U.S. Corporate and Government Sales

1-800-382-3419

corpsales@pearsontechgroup.com

For sales outside of the U.S., please contact

International Sales international@pearsoned.com

Associate Publisher

Michael Stephens

Acquisitions Editor

Neil Rowe

Development Editor

Sean Dixon

Managing Editor

Charlotte Clapp

Project Editor

Dan Knott

Copy Editor

Carl Hitchcock

Indexer

Erika Millen

Proofreader

Wendy Ott

Technical Editor

Nathan Cain

Publishing Coordinator

Cindy Teeters

Interior Designer

Gary Adair

Cover Designer

Sandra Schroeder

Page Layout

Susan Ceiselman

Contents at a Glance

Introduction 1

Part I: The Xbox Demystified

1 Welcome to the Xbox Scene 7

2 Disassembling Your Xbox 19

3 Identifying Your Xbox Revision 57

Part II: Mod Chips

4 Introduction to Xbox Modding 69

5 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip . . . . . 83

6 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip 99

Part III: Software Mods

7 The Xenium Operating System 129

8 EvolutionX Dashboard 157

9 Avalaunch Dashboard 179 1 0 Xbox Media Center 207

## Part IV: Major Hardware Mods

1 1 Replacing the Xbox Case 233

1 2 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive 259

1 3 Lighting Up the Case 275

1 4 Cooling Down Your Xbox 289

## Appendix

A Xbox Resources 297

Index 301

## Table of Contents

What You Will Learn

Conventions Used in This Book

Part I: The Xbox Demystified

Chapter 1: Welcome to the Xbox Scene 7

"Getting" the Xbox 7

Breaking into an Industry . 8

Video Game Competition: The Other Side of the Coin 9

Learning Some Hard Lessons 10

Xbox Rumors Realized 11

XboxRoots . .. 11



Timing Is Everything .	12
The Game Developer's Dream Machine	12
Bridging the PC/Console Gap	13
Promises, Promises	14
Did Xbox Work Too Well? .	14
What Can You Do with Your Xbox? . .	15
So What's the Spiel?	16
Summary	18
Chapter 2: Disassembling Your Xbox	19
Getting to Know the Xbox Hardware .	19
TheCase . ...	21
The Motherboard .. .	22
The Power Supply ... .	22
The DVD-ROM Drive	22
The Hard Drive .	24
The Central Processing Unit (CPU)	24
The Graphics Processing Unit (GPU)	25
Front-Side Bus (FSB)	25
Media Control Processor (MCPX) .	25
Removing the Cover , .	26
Removing the Rubber Feet ...	26
Removing the Six Case Screws ..	26

Lifting the Case	29
Examining the Main Deck	30
Removing the Hard Drive	32
Removing the Hard Drive Tray Screw	33
Removing the Cables ,	33
Lifting the Hard Drive Tray	35
Removing the DVD-ROM Drive	38
The DVD-ROM Screws	38
Removing the IDE and Power Cables	38
Pulling the DVD-ROM Drive	39
Removing the Motherboard ...	43
Removing the IDE Cable and DVD-ROM Power Connectors -	44
Removing the Motherboard Power Supply Connector	46
Removing the Motherboard Screws	48
Unplugging the Controller Port Cables	48
Removing the Case Fan	52
Removing the Motherboard	52
Summary	56
Chapter 3: Identifying Your Xbox Revision	57
Revision Notes	57
1.0	57

1.1 . . . . .	57
1.2	58
1.3	58
1.4 ...	58
1.5	59
1.6	59
Methods of Identification	60
Manufacturing Date	60
Hardware Serial Number	61
Video Chip Verification	62
Xbox BIOS Version Number ..	63
Special/Limited Edition Exceptions	64
Halo Special Edition	64
Limited Edition Crystal Pack	64
Additional Exceptions	65
Summary	66

## Part II: Mod Chips

Chapter 4s Introduction to Xbox Modding	69
What Is a Mod Chip?	69
How Does a Mod Chip Work? ..	70
Are Mod Chips Legal?	70
The Modded Xbox . . . . .	73

Why the DMCA Does More Harm Than Good . 74

What Can You Do with a Mod Chip? 75

Xbox Media Center (XBMC) 75

Homebrew Games . ... .... 76

Overview of Available Mod Chips . . 77

Xenium .... ... 78

Xecuter 78

SmartXX . 79

XB1T . , . 79

Aladdin 80

X-Chip 80

Before You Install a Mod Chip... 80

Summary ... 82

Chapter 5: Installing a Solderless Mod Chip 83

Solderless Xenium Installation

Locating the LPC .

Fixing a Pre-Soldered LPC Locating the DO .. .

Installing the Solderless Adapter

83 85 87 88 89

Installing the Mod Chip .. . 94

Booting Up the Mod Chip .96

Summary . .97

## Chapter 6: Installing a Soldered Mod Chip 99

Removing the Motherboard ... . 99

Installing a Pin Header (All Revisions) ... 103

Preparing to Solder . 104

Locating the LPC 105

RemovingPin4 ... . .107

## Contents

Inserting the Pin Header Soldering the Pins . , .

Installing the DO Wire

Xbox Revision L6 Mod Chip Installation Double-Checking the  
Revision Installing the Pin Header Rebuilding the LPC . Installing  
the LFRAME Wire .

## Troubleshooting

Problem with the DO/LFRAME Problem with the LPC Other  
Problems

Summary ...

107

110 113 115 115 116 116 123

.125 125 125

.125 126

## Part III: Software Mods

## Chapter 7: The Xenium Operating System

Overview of the Xenium O/S The Xenium O/S Main Menu

Launch .

Disk Tools

EEPROM Tools

Settings

Reboot

Recovery

Power Off . Summary

Chapter 8: EvolutionX Dashboard

What Is EvolutionX?

Installing the EvoX BIOS and Dash

Acquiring-EvoX

Installing the EvoX Dashboard

Installing the EvoX BIOS . Creating a Custom BIOS Using the EvoX Dash

Tweaking EvoX Dash

The EvoX Dash Interface Creating Your Own EvoX Skins . Summary  
.....

129

129 . 130 . .131 .134 .140

144

155 . 155 ...155

156

157
.157
. 158
. 159
159
160
165
. 167
167
168
173
...177

## viii The Black Art of XBox Mods

### Chapter 9: Avalaunch Dashboard 179

#### Installing Avalaunch 179

#### Customizing a BIOS for Avalaunch . . 180

#### Copying the Avalaunch Files to Your Xbox 181

#### Adding Avalaunch to the Xenium O/S Launch Menu . . .181

#### Running Avalaunch 186

#### Avalaunch Features , .186

#### The Main Menu 186



XBox Media Player	187
Games . ...	187
Applications. . . . .	191
Emulators .	191
File Manager . ...	191
IRC Client Telnet Client .	
Settings . Reboot	
Shutdown Summary	
194 194 195 204 205 205	
Chapter 10: Xbox Media Center	207
Overview of Xbox Media Center	207
Installing Xbox Media Center	208
Installing the XBMC Files	209
Installing a Hacked BIOS	209
Running Xbox Media Center	211
TheMainMenu	212
My Programs	212
My Files	215
My Pictures . . . . .	217
My Music	221
My Videos	224
Weather	226

Settings . . 229

Summary , . 230

## Part IV: Major Hardware Mods

### Contents

#### Chapter 11: Replacing the Xbox Case

Stock Cases , .. .

Tearing Down the Old Case

Replacing the DVD-ROM Tray Panel

Assembling the New Case Aftermarket Cases ...

Assembling the Aftermarket Case

The System Jewel

Summary .....

#### Chapter 12: Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive

Overview of the Swap

The Stock Xbox Hard Drive

The Replacement Hard Drive

Connecting Both Hard Drives

Master/Slave Settings

Connecting the IDE Cable

Connecting the Power Cables

The Hard Drive Upgrade Wizard

Running the Drive Upgrade Wizard

Formatting the New Drive and Transferring Data Verifying the Upgrade Process Summary

Chapter 13: Lighting Up the Case

Cosmetic Xbox Modifications

Cold Cathode Lighting

How About a Glowing Jewel? .

Removing the Cold Cathode Bulb

Gluing the Light to the Case Cover

Custom Lighting with LEDs

Creating Your Own LED Light Show

Building the Main LED Wire Loom Putting It All Together , ,

Examining the Cold Cathode Light

The Custom LEDs Summary

233

233 ...234 ,245 .246 .252 . 252 . 258 . 258

259

.. 259

260

. 261

. 262

. 262

264

264

267

.267

271

273

274

275

275

.. 277 279 279 281

. 281 281

. 283 285 286 286

.. 287

## Chapter 14: Cooling Down Your Xbox 289

Software Cooling Solutions 289

Setting Fan Speed in BIOS . 290

Setting Fan Speed in XBMC 291

Active Cooling for Your Xbox . . 292

Hard Drive Cooling 294

Finding Room in the Case 294

Installing a Hard Drive Cooling Fan 295

Summary . . . . 296

Appendix A: Xbox Resources 297

Xbox Information Sites ... 297

Mod Chip Manufacturers ,298

Xbox Hardware Sites ... 298

Xbox Software Sites . . 299

Index 301

## About the Author

Jonathan S- Harbour has been an avid gamer and programmer for 17 years, having started with early systems such as the Commodore PET, Apple II, and Tandy 1000. The first console he disassembled and tried to hack was the Atari 2600. He holds a degree in computer information systems and enjoys writing code in several languages. Jonathan has experience with several platforms, including Windows, Linux, Pocket PC, and Game Boy Advance. Jonathan has written nine books on the subjects of game programming, application development, console programming, cross-platform programming, and now console modding. He maintains a website dedicated to these subjects at <http://www.jharbour.com>.

## Dedication

For My Father, Martin Scott Harbour

## Acknowledgments

This book would not exist without all the incredible amount of

diligence by individuals who freely gave their hard-earned knowledge to others. This book is not a unique work by any means, and although everything described herein was performed by me, I do not take credit for figuring out anything on my own. I am just a writer! Yes, I am a hard-core gamer and programmer, but I am by no means a hardware hacker. What I have done here is simply study, build, and explain how it was done. To all of you out there who tinkered, experimented, and figured it all out, then shared your knowledge with the world, this book is dedicated to you.

This project was a labor of love, and I hope it shows in my writing style. I appreciate this opportunity, as my forte is software development by day, game programming by night. I would like to thank Sams Publishing for releasing this book. I appreciate the daily encouragement and support of Neil Rowe and thank Sean Dixon for his hard work. I appreciate the hard-working editors, artists, and layout specialists at Sams for doing such a fine job. Thanks go to Team Xodus for providing me with several mod chips for the development of this book. Also, a special thanks to Artifex and Stealth for the Xenium OS. I owe a big thanks to the folks at [www.customps2.com](http://www.customps2.com) for several clear cases that are featured in this book.

I thank my wife, Jennifer, for putting up with the insane deadlines I faced with this project that soaked up all of my free time for several months. Thank you for being so supportive! I am also blessed to have two wonderful kids, Jeremiah and Kayleigh, who force me to take a break now and then. I thank God for my family.

To my readers, thank you for buying this book. I am certain that you will enjoy it! Finally, to the open source community—lighten up a little! You are winning, after all.

## We Want to Hear from You!

As the reader of this book, you are our most important critic and commentator. We value your opinion and want to know what we're doing right, what we could do better, what areas you'd like to see us publish in, and any other words of wisdom you're willing to pass

our way.

As an associate publisher for Sams Publishing, I welcome your comments. You can email or write me directly to let me know what you did or didn't like about this book—as well as what we can do to make our books better.

Please note that I cannot help you with technical problems related to the topic of this book. We do have a User Services group, however, where I will forward specific technical questions related to the book.

When you write, please be sure to include this book's title and author as well as your name, email address, and phone number. I will carefully review your comments and share them with the author and editors who worked on the book.

Email: [feedback@sampublishing.com](mailto:feedback@sampublishing.com)

Mail: Michael Stephens Associate Publisher Sams Publishing 800 East 96th Street Indianapolis, IN 46240 USA

For more information about this book or another Sams Publishing title, visit our website at [www.sampublishing.com](http://www.sampublishing.com). Type the ISBN (excluding hyphens) or the title of a book in the Search field to find the page you're looking for.

The Xbox might be described as a powerful, proprietary PC that has been customized exclusively for running games. This book will help you to maximize the potential of your Xbox video game console by showing you how to modify your Xbox in various ways. You will learn how to disassemble your Xbox, right down to the motherboard, and you will learn about each component inside the Xbox case.

Introduction





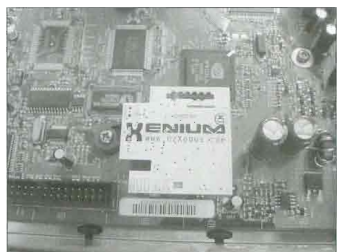
- 

Several chapters are devoted to the most important part of Xbox modding: choosing a mod chip and then learning how to install it in your Xbox. The mod chip allows you to run third-party software on your Xbox that is normally limited exclusively to licensed retail games. By being able to run custom software on your Xbox, you will be able to transform it into a powerful media center capable of playing music files (such as MP3) and video files (such as MPEG2, Divx, WMV, and Xvid). All of the Xbox mod chips currently available work on the same principles, so you will find the coverage of the material applicable to whatever mod chip you use (or plan to install while reading this book). Although this book addresses several of the major mod chips currently available, it focuses primarily on the Xenium mod chip.

I chose this mod chip because it comes with an excellent operating system with features that will assist with upgrading the hard drive and installing your favorite Dashboards and software. All of the mod chips currently on the market are similar, so even if you're using another mod chip (such as SmartXX, Xecuter, XBit, X-Chip, or Chameleon), you will find the topics relevant and helpful because the focus is mainly on the Xbox itself, not on any specific model of aftermarket hardware.

Several chapters are devoted to the installation and use of custom Dashboard software—which is somewhat like an operating system for your "modded" Xbox, allowing you to take advantage of software you have installed. For that matter, the new Dashboards provide a way for you to copy software to your Xbox from your PC using a local area network (LAN) connection. Most custom Dashboards come with an FTP server, so you will be able to log on to your Xbox as if it were a computer on the Internet and then transfer files to your Xbox hard drive. Some Dashboards also

provide a SAMBA/SMB server that allows you to treat the Xbox hard drive like a shared network drive.



## Introduction

For you to get the most out of your Xbox, this book will also teach you how to upgrade your hard drive. You will be able to install a new hard drive in your Xbox—replacing the original hard drive—with up to 300GB of storage space, which is plenty of room for anything you want to do with your Xbox.

The hundreds of photos in this book will help to guide you through each subject area—from identifying your particular revision of the Xbox (did you know there are seven "unofficial" versions?) to installing a mod chip to upgrading your hard drive. Everything is fully explained, and each subject area includes dozens of photos

that illustrate each step of the process of modding your Xbox.

uriFiJts,

## My Programs

No matter what you plan to do with your Xbox—from turning it into a monster gaming rig or a media center computer to acting as a hub for your big-screen TV and entertainment center—you will find the information you have been looking for in this concise, fully illustrated, thorough, and step-by-step guide to Xbox mods. This book is part hardware and part software, and there is equal treatment of both. You will learn how to fully customize your Xbox from a functional perspective,

as well as from a cosmetic perspective. And you will learn how to modify the software to match the exotic changes you have rendered on the physical appearance and functionality of your new "super" Xbox.

So, if you are just browsing at a bookstore, flip through the pages and see for yourself how every subject is completely explored and explained, and every step of the process is completely laid out for you. I'm sure you will find this book an excellent addition to your library and an indispensable reference that you will keep an arm's length away at all times. This book is not just a guide; it is a reference, with all the major features and specifications of each revision of the Xbox, as well as all the major mod chips at your fingertips.

\*,\*,\*%

## Introduction

### What You Will Learn

There are 14 chapters in this book, organized by major subject. Here are the main subjects that you will find in this book:

Part I: The Xbox Demystified. The first part of the book provides

introductory material that will get you heading in the right direction for modding your Xbox, with an overview chapter on the "Xbox scene" another on disassembling your Xbox, and a chapter on how to identify your Xbox revision.

**Part II: Mod Chips.** The second part of the book explains how to choose the right mod chip for your needs and then how to install a typical mod chip, with illustrated explanations for the major Xbox revisions (an important consideration because mod chip installation is different for some Xbox versions).

**Part III: Software Mods.** The third part of the book gives you an overview of the aftermarket software that is available for your Xbox, including a tutorial on using the Xenium O/S, EvolutionX, Avalaunch, and Xbox Media Center.

**Part IV: Major Hardware Mods.** The fourth part of the book covers hardware mods, or modifications that you can do with your Xbox system components, including how to replace the case, upgrade the hard drive, and how to install lighting and cooling gear.

## Conventions Used in This Book

The following features are used in this book to highlight portions of text that are important. You will find note, tip, and caution boxes here and there throughout the book.

### NOTE

This is what a note looks like. Notes are additional information that is related to the current subject without interrupting the text.

### CAUTION

This is what a caution looks like. Cautions provide you with guidance about what to do or not do in a given situation.

This is what a tip looks like. Tips give you helpful pointers related to the current subject being covered that may save you some time.

## PART

### The Xbox Demystified

CHAPTER 1 Welcome to the Xbox Scene CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox CHAPTER 3 Identifying Your Xbox Revision

## I

### Welcome to the Xbox Scene

In this chapter, you will learn why Xbox is such a popular video game console, and why it has so many uses beyond mere game play. You will learn some of the history leading up to Xbox's development and production, and then I will highlight some of the key modifications you will learn to do with your Xbox in this book.

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- What it means to be a fan
- The history of Xbox's development
- Microsoft's dedication to developers
- What you can do with your Xbox

### "Getting" the Xbox

The Xbox is the most powerful video game console ever designed and remains the reigning champ of the specs three years after it was first introduced to the public (see Figure 1.1). I have been an Xbox fan since the day it was released, when I gripped the original thick controller for the first time, guiding Master Chief through the Covenant-infested levels of Halo at a display in a video game store. I was awestruck, mesmerized, and utterly sold on this consumer electronic device, hook, line, and sinker, like I have not been sold on any video game console for many years. If you must know, I believed the Nintendo SNES was the last great console and believed that Sony would rule the video game world. I was happily mistaken

on that false prediction!

The following sections chart the development of the Xbox.

## CHAPTER 1 We c ime to the Xbox Scene



FIGURE 1/1 Xbox is a highly customizable video game console with great potential.

### Breaking into an Industry

An oft-repeated theory of Microsoft's success goes something like this: Microsoft expects to lose money on the first two versions of a product until it is perfected by the third version, after which Microsoft then dominates that market. This theory does have some weight when you consider the history of Microsoft's main successes. The lesson learned by anyone observing Microsoft is that persistence pays off in the end. Giving up too soon is often a mistake! Here are some examples:

\* The Windows O/S was not successful until version 3.0 came out with vast improvements that resulted in widespread acceptance in the PC industry. Windows 3.0 launched Microsoft into the stratosphere of market dominance and profitability.

■ Windows CE for portable devices finally achieved a level of market dominance when Windows CE 3.0 came out with the shorthand "Pocket PC" moniker.

■ Microsoft Office competed in a formerly thick business productivity software market for many years. Then, Office 95 was released shortly after the launch of Windows 95, talcing PC users

into the 32-bit realm and leaving many productivity software competitors back in the 16-bit realm. Office 97 and later versions dominated the market.

These are but a few examples, but they represent Microsoft's primary sources of income. Microsoft has been known on occasion to acquire a product that is already mature instead of relying on revision to perfect it. Such was the case with Internet Explorer—based on the infamous NCSA Mosaic web browser.

Entering the "Internet market" late in the game, Microsoft found itself playing catch-up very quickly to adapt to the new wired, online world. NCSA Mosaic allowed Microsoft to skip the usual expensive and time-consuming revision process and produce a web browser to compete with Netscape Navigator.

\

### Video Game Competition: The Other Side of the Coin

Microsoft faced a similar situation with the video game industry. Microsoft actually entered the game industry back in 1983, surprisingly enough, with a product called MSX. MSX was the result of a collaborative effort between ASCII and Microsoft. The goal of the MSX was to produce a standard computer system that would run the same software regardless of the manufacturer (a familiar theme with Microsoft, wouldn't you agree?). MSX was manufactured by Matsushita and Sony, with O/S and software provided by Microsoft. Because the goal was supposed to be an open-architecture computer system, there were eventually many manufacturers. In addition to the two mentioned, they included Yamaha, Toshiba, Philips, Panasonic, and Daewoo. MSX was a hybrid machine, combining the best of the PC world and the console world at the time with expansion slots, a game cartridge slot, and Microsoft BASIC. But Microsoft's experience with the MSX was too early an example to have any bearing on the modern game market.

,

In the late 1990s, Microsoft was very eager to tap into the lucrative game industry that was rebounding from a lag period and entering an upswing of innovation. Recall that PlayStation (see Figure 1.2) and Nintendo 64 (see Figure 1.3) were the only serious players at the time. Microsoft tried to market WebTV as a game console, which obviously failed. The market has shown time and again that gamers are not interested in a multifunction device with cable TV, web browsing, email, and games all in one. Isn't that what a PC is for? Apparently, some companies believed that a huge market existed for these devices, but they were just

-> •"

FIGURE 1.2 Sony's PlayStation consoles have led the video game market in sales for several years.



FIGURE 1.3 Nintendo 64 was technically superior to PlayStation but suffered from an antiquated cartridge-based design.

10

## CHAPTER 1 Welcome to the Xbox Scene

not successful in hindsight. The attempt to use WebTV to compete with Sony and Nintendo failed. Grandma and Grandpa may buy a WebTV device to keep in touch with their grandchildren, but they are not interested in playing games.

### Learning Some Hard Lessons

What was Microsoft's solution after learning some hard lessons from the failure of WebTV? The answer was so obvious that Microsoft seemed to have disregarded the obvious solution. Here are some key points that the Xbox designers had to eventually realize:



■ Most PC users are playing games on Windows PCs.

■ Console developers of Nintendo 64 and PlayStation games are using Windows PCs.

■ DirectX is the standard game library for Windows PCs.

In a nutshell, Microsoft turned to its greatest strength—the Windows O/S and DirectX library—to build a custom video game console. Not just a consumer electronic device; not just a competing device to take on Sony/Nintendo; not just another console; Microsoft decided to build a PC that developers would love. What have developers been putting up with for the past 10-15 years? In a word, inconsistency. The game developer's biggest obstacle is creating a game that will run on as many PCs as possible. But the PC industry is so crazy that there are consumers using a wide variety of processors, video cards, and sound cards. Here are some of the processors that were still being used in the late 1990s:

■ Intel i486

■ Intel Pentium, Pentium II

■ AMD K6-2, K6-III

■ AMD Athlon

And what about the plethora of video cards and sound cards, each with a different chipset, requiring custom drivers? These problems were greatly reduced when DirectX debuted, but remember that it was not until 1997 that DirectX really became useful when 3.0 came out

(yet another example of the "3.0" theory?). There were still MS-DOS games being released in

1997: Jedi Knight and Dungeon Keeper are two notable examples. But by 1999, DirectX was used

by nearly every major game development studio to produce Windows games.

## NOTE

Microsoft has subsidized the costs of Xbox hardware and software development and production for the past three years, taking great losses of annual income (measured in hundreds of millions of dollars) in an effort to solidify its position in the entertainment industry.

"Getting" the Xbox

11

And these developers hated developing games for PlayStation and Nintendo 64! Many of the same studios producing Windows games were also producing console games, and games were being ported from PC to console and vice versa. A general trend in cross-platform development was brewing in the industry as companies realized that most of the development work in game logic and resources (artwork, 3D models, music, sound, and so on) could be reused when the game is ported to other platforms.

Xbox Rumors Realized

Rumors began circulating in late

1999 about Microsoft's new console

that would be based on an Intel or

AMD CPU and Nvidia GeForce 256

GPU, and would be powered by

Windows CE. Why use Windows CE,

the PDA O/S used in handhelds like the Casio Cassiopeia and HP Jornada? Microsoft believed

that it was a suitable O/S for a game console, and used Sega as a testbed.

## NOTE

As you will learn in more detail in the next chapter, Xbox was eventually equipped with an Intel Celeron 733MHz CPU, Nvidia GeForce 3 GPU, and 64MB of memory.

## Xbox Roots

Sega released the Dreamcast (see Figure 1.4) in 1999 to great acclaim as a direct rival to PlayStation and Nintendo 64, and caused an interesting trend in technological leapfrogging. While the Dreamcast secured the demise of the antiquated, cartridge-based Nintendo 64 (which utterly failed to attract developers, a hard lesson for Nintendo, which was used to having developers beg for licensing in earlier years), the Dreamcast faced a formidable game lineup for the PlayStation and a solid customer base loyal to Sony. Sega enjoyed being the quirky company in this business, having succeeded greatly with the Master System and Genesis, and to a certain degree, competing with Nintendo's Game Boy with the Sega Game Gear.

But Sega suffered from "too little, too soon" syndrome. The Sega Saturn was an underpowered, overpriced console released in 1994 that was overwhelmed by the Sony PlayStation a year later. Sega came back with the Dreamcast in 1999, far too late in the game to make a

<

V

,

T

## FIGURE

Sega Dreamcast was a very capable video game console that was powered by Windows CE and DirectX.

serious dent before the PlayStation 2 debuted. The Dreamcast should have come out a year or two earlier to allow time for a strong game base to build up. Instead, PS2 was released just one year into Dreamcast's lifetime. Although Dreamcast was a good console with capable hardware specs, it simply could not compete with the superior PS2.

### Timing Is Everything

Microsoft watched this drama unfold for several years before choosing just the right time to make an entrance. Those who kept a close eye on the industry might have encouraged Sega to push for a Dreamcast release at all costs in 1998, a year sooner. Instead, Sega packed in the features and intended to market Dreamcast as both game machine and WebTV. That Sega worked with Microsoft on Dreamcast is no surprise, given this direction. Microsoft wanted a more powerful piece of hardware to power WebTV, so an agreement was made to include Windows CE in the Dreamcast, along with a limited version of DirectX and even a scaled-down version of Internet Explorer!

### NOTE

The number of exploits discovered for Dreamcast are legendary. Dreamcast might be considered the little brother of the Xbox as far as exploitation and hacking are concerned.

Sega would offer developers the option of writing DirectX code, or custom Dreamcast SDK code, depending on need. The Windows aspect of Dreamcast would allow third parties to conceivably produce applications for Dreamcast that would be web enabled (Dreamcast featured a 56k modem, and an optional broadband

adapter was available in limited quantities), because Sega offered a keyboard and mouse for Dreamcast, making it into a veritable PC! The aspirations of both Sega and Microsoft were great because the capabilities of Dreamcast were great. Unfortunately, the keyboard and mouse were not widely accepted. In an interesting twist, Unreal Tournament and Quake III would actually foster more keyboard/mouse sales than the intended web browsing and email usage would. PC gamers found it natural (and welcome!) to play first-person shooter games using the keyboard and mouse, whereas most twitch gamers found that to be a peculiar oddity.

### The Game Developer's Dream Machine

What did Microsoft learn from the experience of working with Sega on the Dreamcast? For one thing, that no one wants to browse the Web on his/her TV! Despite the apparent appeal of this feature, most consumers just don't enjoy the eyestrain of trying to read web content on a screen with 320x240 resolution (via a composite TV cable). Another thing that Microsoft learned is that a game console should not be marketed as a cheap PC, like a WebTV. It should do one thing only, and do that one thing well: run games.

### Timing Is Everything

13

Thus, Xbox was designed with the best features of both PCs and consoles. Xbox would take advantage of the latest in off-the-shelf PC hardware, would run a scaled-down version of Windows 2000, and would be based entirely on DirectX development. This is the best of both worlds indeed! A standard PC architecture with guaranteed, consistent specifications that developers can rely on, with all hardware device drivers hard-coded into the O/S > a DVD-ROM drive, and a hard drive. Xbox would be capable of pushing out composite, S-Video, and High Definition TV signals, as well as Dolby Digital (DTS) for ACS surround sound with support for digital coax and optical audio cables. In other words, Xbox would be the first console to deliver PC-esque resolutions. The obvious appeal is being able to play PC-quality games on large, widescreen HDTVs

with very high quality instead of the usual washed-out image on composite big-screen TVs.

### Bridging the PC/Console Gap

Xbox would bridge the gap between the PC and console worlds, and would make it very easy to port existing or in-development PC games to a console, with strong marketing and sales implications. Xbox was an easy sell to the American game development industry, although it was a challenge in the saturated Japanese and European markets. The Xbox team would cater to developers, asking their input, making their every wish come true. Xbox would be a dream machine for development. How far would Microsoft go with its dedication to developers? Microsoft would host all online multiplayer game servers on the Xbox Live network. If a licensed company wanted to take its game online or provide online content to expand its game, then Live would host it at no cost to developers. This central support system differs greatly from Sony and Nintendo's policies that require developers to host their own game servers. How would Xbox handle new content and achieve an updateable core O/S? By including a hard drive built in to the console!

Despite these compelling features and PC-like capabilities, along with a high level of stability and

performance not usually associated with Windows PCs, Xbox would not feature any consumer

electronic add-on devices. Xbox

would not be an advanced WebTV,

would not include a web browser,

and most surprisingly, would not

have a keyboard or mouse available,

ever. Microsoft promised developers

that Xbox is a game machine, wholly

and entirely, and would never be marketed any other way. And the promise was kept! To this day, no keyboard or mouse has been offered for Xbox. The Xbox Controller S (see Figure 1.5) is the primary input device (having usurped the original, larger Xbox controller).



FIGURE

The Xbox Controller S features two analog joysticks, a D-pad, and 12 buttons.

## CHAPTER 1 Welcome to the Xbox Scene

### Promises, Promises...

Even more surprising is the fact that Microsoft promised the development community a longevity on the Xbox regardless of net sales. Microsoft promised to subsidize the Xbox whether it made a profit or not; game companies had an opportunity to make millions on retail game sales, and an extremely low {unheard-of in the console industry) licensing system would ensure solid returns for each developer. Microsoft was in this for the long haul Few companies in the world can make such promises, and no other

company in the world has a cash reserve estimated at around \$20 billion. While Sony and Nintendo are forced to draw a net profit, Microsoft can afford to blow large sums on Xbox marketing and manufacturing for a single goal. That goal is not to make money, initially, but rather, to secure Microsoft's position within this lucrative industry. Such long-term thinking is unusual, but part and parcel of Microsoft's phenomenal long-term success.

Thus, after the hard lessons learned with WebTV and Dreamcast, Microsoft built a console that developers would love and gamers would love. Realizing these two necessities, Microsoft forged ahead with the Xbox and, well, now you know the rest of the story.

### Did Xbox Work Too Well?

x,

The very aspects of Xbox that have made it such a success are now under scrutiny by Microsoft as rumors point to a next-generation Xbox without a hard drive (see Figure 1.6), utilizing solid-state memory or flash memory technology. Although Xbox has never achieved the sales figures of the PS2, it is a very successful console because it is still widely accepted by developers three years since release, ensuring a healthy line of future games over the next couple of years. Microsoft's dedication to developers extends into a realm that

console manufacturers are particularly sensitive toward: hacking and game piracy. These two issues must be contained within the prime product life of a console, or development support will wane or abandon a console entirely. It is unfortunate that hackers hurt the life cycle of the Dreamcast at such a critical time by pirating games so blatantly.

11] :!, 1 . " <  
- ■  
.... , r  
\*  
•

FIGURE 1.6 The Xbox hard drive.



## What Can You Do with Your Xbox?

15

### NOTE

It is funny to recall that id Software originally planned on porting Doom 3 to Dreamcast, if that is any indication on just how long the game was in development....

Pirating games is bad enough as a singular problem in the game industry, but once discovered, the exploitation of the Dreamcast continued unchecked. There are many arguments as to why the Dreamcast failed—primarily due to competition with the PS2 first, and then the GameCube and Xbox the following year (after which point, all development shifted to these next-gen consoles). But part of the reason behind the Dreamcast development slowdown was due to the level of piracy occurring before the three new consoles debuted, and Sega's inability to stem the tide. Had Dreamcast been allowed to mature during the first two years of its product life cycle (only possible with a strong game library), it might have retained a small but profitable share of the market. I make this claim because some extraordinary trend-setting and technically innovative games were developed for Dreamcast. And let's not forget games like Alien Front Online, Quake III, Unreal Tournament, and, of course, the very popular Phantasy Star Online.

The features that Microsoft set out to include in Xbox to make it the best console ever designed are the very features that have made it such a great computing device for hackers, and this fact is affecting Microsoft's designs for the next Xbox (or is it called Xbox Next?).

## What Can You Do with Your Xbox?

You've been reading thus far about how the Xbox is such a great console and that hackers love to tinker with it because there's so much potential under the "hood" of Xbox. But what can you really do with your Xbox that you aren't already doing (namely, playing games)? It is true that a lot of hardware geeks love to tinker just for

the learning experience, but what about the rest of us who really just want to have some fun playing games?

To be blunt, if you feel this way, then you are the target audience for Xbox and need not be concerned with what additional things you can do with your Xbox; instead, just have fun using it. But if you are craving more, want to see just what the Xbox can really do, then you've come to the right

place!

I've been involved in the game industry as a developer and as a consumer for more than 15 years. In that time, I've seen a lot of trends, a lot of gaming platforms come and go. But one thing that remains consistent over the years is the amount of software piracy that is going on.

16

Welcome to the Xbox Scene

## WAREZ ARE FOR PATHETIC LOSERS

If your desire with this book is to learn how to pirate games, you'll be disappointed because I am absolutely opposed to this illegal activity! People who traffic in warez do much to harm the game industry. If you find yourself making excuses to pirate games, at least you have a conscience; many don't even have that much concern, believing that the entire world owes them a favor. It's all about making excuses for bad behavior. The ironic thing about software pirates is that they really don't enjoy playing games at all. It's all about inventory, not about having fun! The warez groups on IRC, the Web, and in newsgroups are made up primarily of adolescents, still living at home off Mom and Dad's bill, with far too much free time on their hands. If software pirates cared more about playing games than their pathetic geekfest warez listings, they would find that they are entirely missing the point.

Pirated games ("warez") are almost always of very poor quality

because games are torn apart, resampled, reduced in size, and reassembled before distribution among warez circles. I have a suggestion for you, if you have trafficked in warez: Buy used games. There is a very strong and vibrant used video game market now thriving in the retail channels, with many games not even a month old going for half the retail price or less. Why waste all of your time going through the whole process of tracking down warez and downloading them when you can buy a game for 10 to 15 bucks? What is 10 bucks, anyway? When I was younger, that was an average day at the arcade, back when console games retailed for 70 to 75 bucks.

Stop wasting your time (and bandwidth) on warez! It's dumb. It hurts the very thing that supposedly brings you enjoyment. It is stealing. It takes away from developers who are working their butts off for you to come up with innovative and creative new games. They won't keep doing that kind of work forever; many give up and go into IT, which pays better and offers better benefits. You will find that buying a new or used game once a week is far more rewarding and enjoyable, and you will appreciate the game more.

So What's the Spiel?

Here is a list of significant things that you will learn to do with your Xbox in this book:

1. Install a mod chip. This is, first and foremost, the most significant step you will take toward modding your Xbox. All others are irrelevant (adding LEDs to the case, and so on). The mod chip is perfectly legal to purchase and install in your Xbox, and is analogous to buying and installing a turbo for your car. A mod chip unlocks the potential of the Xbox, boosting its capabilities. Figure 1.7 shows the Xenium mod chip installed in an Xbox motherboard. With a mod chip, you will be able to install a larger hard drive and load custom software. Figure 1.8 shows the Xenium OS, which allows you to run custom software on the Xbox. Because Xbox is so well equipped, it would make a perfect media center for your living room, able to play music and home movies just for starters.

## So What's the Spiel? 17

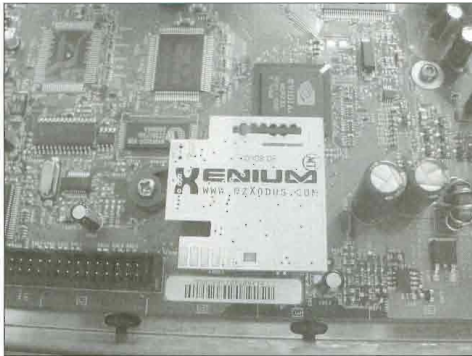


FIGURE 1.7 The Xenium mod chip has been installed on the Xbox motherboard.

raio

Launch Menu Disk Tools EEprom Tools Settings Reboot Recovery  
Power ON

FIGURE 1.8 The Xenium O/S 2.0 (built into the mod chip's BIOS) is used to run custom Xbox software.

2. Install a new hard drive (see Figure 1.9). The Xbox hard drive varies from 8GB to 10GB, depending on the assembly line and date of manufacture. A few years ago that would have been unprecedented, but today, a few gigs are nothing. So it is very helpful to swap out the original Xbox hard drive for a larger one. This wiU allow you to store more

## CHAPTER 1 Welcome to the Xbox Scene

soundtracks, saved games, and custom software. My Xbox has 250 gigs, and I will show you how you can expand yours too.



FIGURE 1.9 You can replace the stock Xbox hard drive with a new model with 30 times the capacity.

3. Install custom Xbox software. This is the whole purpose of the mod chip and new hard drive, to allow you to use the Xbox more like a small, powerful, portable PC. Using the mod chip's built-in O/S or using a custom dashboard, you can host web and FTP servers on your Xbox, connected to your LAN. How about a storage backup where you can send files from your PC for safekeeping? The Xbox is a great little server for hosting file backups or for running your entire website! Since the Xbox already has a LAN port, it's ready for action.

## Summary

This chapter presented a high-level overview of the Xbox and its place in the consumer electronic and video game industries. You learned how Xbox compares to other modern consoles, and a little about what you can and can't do with Xbox. After a little history to put the Xbox's life cycle into perspective, you learned about some of the key issues that make Xbox such a great piece of hardware for hackers and what Xbox mods you'll be able to perform in the coming chapters.

## Disassembling Your Xbox

This chapter is an introduction to and overview of the Xbox

hardware. You will learn how to completely disassemble your Xbox down to the last component so you will be familiar with the various parts inside your Xbox. You shouldn't feel nervous about opening your Xbox because it's very much like a simple PC, and I'm sure you've opened your PC's case before. The Xbox comes with a 90-day warranty, so be aware that opening your Xbox will void the warranty (negligible that it is). You will be opening your Xbox many, many times over the course of reading this book, so here is your chance to become acquainted with it.

By learning about the inner configuration of your Xbox, you will be better prepared before you purchase a mod chip. (Chapter 4, "Introduction to Xbox Modding," talks in detail about choosing the best mod chip for your needs.) This chapter will show you how to perform the very important task of identifying the version of your Xbox because it has been changed significantly since November 2001.

Here are the key points covered in this chapter;

- Getting to know the Xbox hardware

- Removing the cover

- \* Removing the hard drive

- Removing the DVDROM drive

- Removing the motherboard

Getting to Know the Xbox Hardware

The Xbox is simple in design, really, mimicking a PC in many ways. There is a motherboard (of course, all video

familiar Intel processor, an equally familiar Nvidia graphics chip, and even a standard IDE cable. Let's look at these components before you actually start disassembling your Xbox so that you 11 know what to expect.

Did you know there are currently seven versions of the Xbox out in the gaming public? That's right, I said seven! Microsoft did not stop working on Xbox design when the first version was released in late 2001. As is always the case in mass-produced consumer electronic devices, the manufacturing process is streamlined, improved, and made more efficient, so the products are cheaper to manufacture. Xbox is no exception, and there is evidence that the most recent versions of Xbox have been produced simply to thwart the use of mod chips! As you will learn in Chapter 4, some Xbox versions are more difficult to modify (with a mod chip). But I'll reserve that discussion for later.

At the retail level, four versions of Xbox were actually available at one time or another. Figure 2.1 shows the basic, stock Xbox packaging as it appeared in 2001, followed by Figure 2.2, showing the original console (which has basically not changed).

Then the Halo Special Edition Xbox came out in late 2003 and soon became a collectible among die-hard Xbox fans. Figure 2.3 shows this special edition Xbox.

The aftermarket for Xbox is truly amazing, considering that this is just a video game console. Gamers grow quite fond of their little boxes of joy, swapping cases, applying skin kits, adding lighting kits, and performing other tasks that are at the forefront of content coverage in this book.

In addition to these models, a special edition Mountain Dew case that was painted in Dew green was offered as

a promotional item. FIGURE 2.2 The standard Xbox console at the time of

launch has changed only internally, not externally.



FIGURE 2.1

Original packaging for the first version of Xbox at launch.



FIGURE 2»3 The clear, green Halo case is unique and attractive.

### The Case

The Xbox case is similar to the many small "Micro ATX" cases that you might use as a media center PC, and it betrays the roots of Xbox as much as any other component (see Figure 2.4).



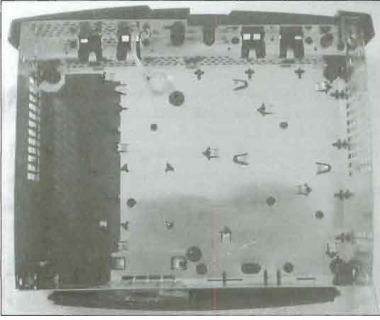


FIGURE 2A The Xbox case.

22

## CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox

### The Motherboard

The Xbox motherboard is what defines the version of the console that you own. Figure 2.5 shows the revision 1.3 motherboard. Although all of the motherboards have the same basic shape, there are differences in the electronics from one revision to the next.

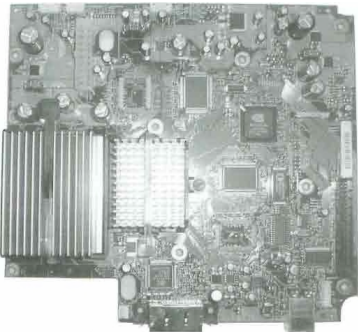


FIGURE 2.5 The Xbox motherboard.

### The Power Supply

The Xbox power supply is exposed within the case and is therefore a considerable hazard if you operate your Xbox with the cover

removed. You can very easily brush the components of the power supply if you tinker with your Xbox with the cover off, so be extremely cautious because you could ruin your Xbox at best or—worst-case scenario—electrocute yourself. In addition to the danger of exposing you to electric shock, the power supply components get very hot while in operation. Figure 2.6 shows the power supply.

### The DVD-ROM Drive

The Xbox DVD-ROM drive is a standard DVD-ROM drive that you might find in any standard PC, except that it has a slightly different type of power connector. Figure 2.7 shows a typical DVD-ROM drive for an Xbox. (Some revisions used different DVD-ROM models; the one shown here is a revision 1.3.)



FIGURE 2.6 The Xbox power supply.



FIGURE 2\*7 The Xbox DVD-ROM drive allows you to play games as well as DVD movies.

## Disassembling Your Xbox

■■■j > r"

■.

### The Hard Drive

The Xbox hard drive has a capacity of 8GB, although there are reports that some Xboxes were equipped with 10GB drives. Figure 2.8 shows a typical Seagate 3.5" hard drive used in the Xbox.

### The Central Processing Unit (CPU)

At the heart of the Xbox are two processors that work in tandem to produce the stunning visuals in modern games that you enjoy. The central processor is an Intel Celeron 733MHz, based on the Pentium 3 core. If this seems like a meager processor to power a next-generation console, remember that a console is a custom-built machine with hardware specifically tuned for games, utilizing a hard-coded set of hardware drivers and a highly optimized software development kit. For the most part, the graphics processor handles all of the rendering, so the CPU need not be extraordinarily fast. Remember that recent revisions to the Xbox no longer have an active cooling system, just a passive heatsink; a faster processor (such as the typical 2GHz chip available at the time of the Xbox launch) would require active cooling.

Note that the thermal compound is still present in the photo shown in Figure 2.9. Because this is a working motherboard, I did not want to remove the material just for the photo opportunity. FIGURE 2.9 The Xbox central processor.

■1,1

t tair Mi «IY Jill

■Mm;M.jliirt»ii t3V StttyW tor 0 far umrtuf,' inform alien or tljl  
jKGM ftflflttc] yinr system OEM.

4 J

FIGURE 2.8 The Xbox hard drive (typically 8GB).



## Getting to Know the Xbox Hardware 2 5

### The Graphics Processing Unit (GPU)

The Xbox graphics processor is a custom-built Nvidia GeForce 3 chip. As a matter of fact, Xbox was ahead of the game in 2001 by incorporating the very first programmable shader technology, available before the consumer version of the GeForce 3 became available. The graphics processor (shown in Figure 2.10) handles all of the graphics (2D and 3D) in an Xbox game, while the video processing (which sends output to your television) is handled by the chipset integrated in the motherboard. This XGPU, also known as the NV2X, has a clock speed of 250MHz, giving Xbox the rendering horsepower to draw about 125 million polygons per second.

Figure 2.10 shows the thermal compound still present on the chip. A dash of Artie Silver thermal compound will be applied before the heatsink is reattached, and this motherboard will continue to be used.

FIGURE 2\*10 The Xbox graphics processor.

### Front-Side Bus (FSB)

The Xbox motherboard contains a front-side bus as well as a back-side bus, just like a PC motherboard. The front-side bus (FSB, also called the North Bridge) connects the CPU to the system and includes the Advanced Graphics Port (AGP), which is built into the motherboard on the Xbox. As a single incorporated motherboard, the XGPU (Nvidia GeForce 3) chip is mounted directly on the bus,

although this is equivalent to including an AGP card slot and plugging in a video card. Obviously, the Xbox doesn't need to be upgraded, although that would be intriguing.... The FSB also includes the memory controller that provides Xbox with access to the 64MB of double-data rate (DDR) memory. The FSB chip runs at 133MHz, providing a bus transfer rate of about 1GB per second.

### Media Control Processor (MCPX)

The media control processor (MCP) is the second half of the motherboard chipset that handles device I/O, handling the IDE port (for the DVD-ROM and hard drive) as well as the controller ports (which are oddly shaped USB ports). This chip, custom-designed for Xbox by Nvidia, runs at 200MHz and handles the 100Mb LAN port as well as the sound electronics (see Figure 2.11), and is equivalent to the South Bridge on a PC.



FIGURE 2.1 I The Xbox MCP chip.

### Removing the Cover

If you are at all intimidated by the thought of getting to know the insides of your Xbox, you will soon overcome that phobia (it's irrational anyway!). Not only is the Xbox easy to disassemble, it is made up of all-too-familiar components (which cannot be said of GameCube or PS2). If you have ever taken apart a Game Boy Advance, you'll be surprised to learn that Xbox is simpler than the GBA. For starters, let's see what you'll need to crack open the case.

### Removing the Rubber Feet

Take your Xbox, unplug everything (obviously), and turn it over. Remove the four rubber feet on the corners to reveal the four main screws, as shown in Figure 2.12.

You will need to use a Torx (star-shaped) wrench, not to be confused with a hex wrench. Torx wrenches have five-point heads (see Figure 2.13).

### Removing the Six Case Screws

Using the appropriate Torx wrench (Xbox screws are typically Torx-10 or Torx-20), remove the four screws. You will also find two screws beneath labels on the bottom of your Xbox. You don't need to remove the entire label; just use your fingernail or a small Torx to scrape around the screw head to punch a hole over the screw. Figure 2.14 shows one of the screws you will find behind a label.



FIGURE 2.12 The bottom of the Xbox.

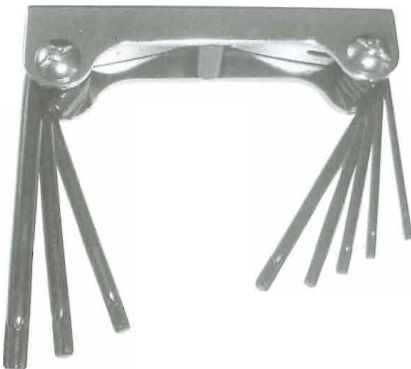


FIGURE 2.13 A typical Torx wrench tool.

## 23 Disassembling Your Xbox

' T]'  
~~~~~ ^ ^ ~~~~~  
\_ \_ L ~~~~~

FIGURE 2.14 Two screws are hidden behind labels. See Figure 2.15 for help locating all of the screws.



FIGURE 2.15 Only six Toix screws protect your Xbox from the machinations of a curious mind.

29

After you have removed all six screws, keep them in a safe place because they are all required to keep the components within the Xbox from moving around during transport (see Figure 2.16).

### Lifting the Case

Now that the screws have been removed, you can lift off the top of the case. Lifting the case can be a bit tricky because it isn't obvious where the top part of the case separates from the bottom part. Take a look at Figures 2.17, 2.18, and 2.19, which show the front, side, and back of the Xbox, respectively.

## NOTE

For some reason, many folks are concerned about voiding the Xbox warranty. Given that it's only a 90-day period, I don't consider that to be a good enough reason to keep my Xbox inviolate, so neither should you. However, if you do have a new Xbox, you will encounter some difficulties with installing a mod chip because the newest Xbox revisions have been adjusted to thwart the efforts of the mod chip makers (or perhaps just to reduce costs using new manufacturing methods or cheaper components). After you have examined the inner sanctum of your Xbox in this chapter, you will learn how to identify which Xbox revision you own in the next chapter.



FIGURE 2 J6 The six Torx-head screws that keep the Xbox together.

30

## CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox



FIGURE 2,17 The front of the Xbox.





FIGURE 2 A 8 The side of the Xbox.



FIGURE 2.19 The back of the Xbox.

### Examining the Main Deck

Finally, Figure 2.20 shows the case after it has been lifted up and off the main deck of the Xbox. You will immediately see the huge DVD-ROM drive mounted beside the standard 3.5" hard

### Removing the Cover

drive, and both are enclosed in plastic frames that prevent movement inside the case (a very good thing!).



FIGURE 2.20 The top portion of the Xbox case has been removed.

Figure 2.21 shows the components up close. Note the standard IDE drive cable connecting the DVD-ROM and hard drive to the motherboard. This example is an Xbox revision 1.4 (see the "MAY 2003" on the DVD-ROM bar code sticker in the lower right?). Revision 1.5 was manufactured in the fall of 2003, while revision 1.6 came out in the spring of 2004.

The parts almost look like they belong together, all tight and snug inside the case like that (when, in fact, they are just PC components). Too bad we're going to tear the thing completely apart and ruin the nice consistent—perhaps even aesthetic?—packaging of components! The first rule of hacking: Know everything. So, let's carefully disassemble this bad boy and see what it's made of. You will follow through with a complete Xbox identification and mod chip installation in the next few chapters, so this isn't all just for educational purposes.



FIGURE 2.21 The drives are connected to the motherboard with a standard IDE cable!

### Removing the Hard Drive

The hard drive tray sits atop the DVD-ROM tray stands, so it must be removed first. Take a close look at the IDE cable shown in Figure 2.22. You will find three Torx screws that need to be removed before the hard drive and DVD-ROM drive will come out. Let's get the IDE cable out of the way first. Lift up the cable so you can get to the connectors as well as a screw hidden beneath the IDE cable, as shown in Figure 2.23.



FIGURE 2.22

The IDE cable is routed carefully underneath the cover.

FIGURE 2.23 Lifting up the IDE cable reveals a screw that must be removed.

### Removing the Hard Drive Tray Screw

Figure 2.24 shows how to remove the screw. This typical Torx

screw is the same type and size of screw you will find in other areas of the Xbox case.



FIGURE 2.24 Removing the single screw holding down the hard drive frame.

### Removing the Cables

After you have removed this single screw from the hard drive frame, you will then need to disengage the IDE and power connectors from the hard drive. The hard drive uses a standard power connector that is compatible with PC power connectors, meaning that you can use a Y-splitter to add standard PC accessories to your case (such as lights and other cosmetic items). If you have a hard time removing the power connector, try using a screwdriver on either side of it to lightly pry it loose, as shown in Figure 2.25. It doesn't take much effort.

The power connector is fed along the top left edge of the hard drive frame (or tray), so you will need to disconnect the wire from the two hooks built into the hard drive frame to loosen it (see Figure 2.26).

Removing the IDE cable is a cinch, using either your fingers or a screwdriver to gently pry the ends of the cable out of the IDE connector on the hard drive using a side-to-side motion (see Figure 2.27).

CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox



FIGURE 2,25 Removing the power connector from the hard drive.

■M—L!\_ a  
■  
= 5 Tu J?

FIGURE 2,26 Freeing the power connector from the hard drive frame.

ŧff  
•^ lit.  
Tj 1  
ilfiul < \*  
\*  
1

FIGURE 2.2" Unplugging the IDE cable from the hard drive.

Lifting the Hard Drive Tray

You will then be able to lift the hard drive frame out of the Xbox case. Tf you have difficulty lifting it, first make sure you have removed the bolt. You can use a screwdriver to pry up the edge of the tray, as shown in Figure 2.28.

After you have managed to raise the hard drive tray, you can easily lift it out of the Xbox case, as shown in Figure 2.29.

You can remove the hard drive from the tray by removing four small Torx screws on either side of the hard drive tray (see Figures 2.30 and 2.31). You may want to do this if you plan to replace the hard drive with a higher capacity drive (which is featured in Chapter 12, "Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive").

See Figure 2.32 for the final result.

### 36 Disassembling Your Xbox



Removing the hard drive tray may require the help of a screwdriver to pry it up.



FIGURE 2.2S Lifting the hard drive tray out of the Xbox case.

## Removing the Hard Drive 37



FIGURE 2,30 The hard drive screws on the left side of the tray.

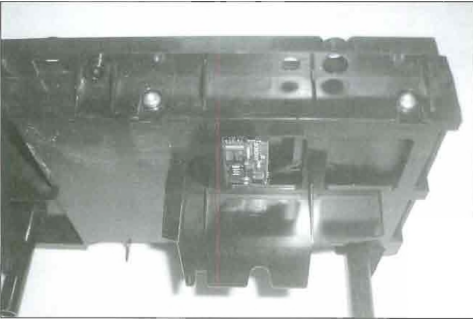


FIGURE 2,31 The hard drive screws on the right side of the tray.

38

## CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xfoox



FIGURE 232 Removing the hard drive from the tray.

## Removing the DVD-ROM Drive

The DVD-ROM drive is mounted to the case with two Torx screws. Figure 2.33 shows where those screws are located (in the DVD-ROM frame).

### The DVD-ROM Screws

For a closer look at the DVD-ROM screws, take a look at Figures 2.34 and 2.35.

## Removing the IDE and Power Cables

Before you lift out the hard drive, it's a good idea to first remove the IDE and power connectors. You can just as easily remove them after lifting out the DVD frame, so it's up to you. Figure 2.36 shows the rear of the DVD-ROM drive with the IDE cable disconnected.

Figure 2.37 shows the power connector on the back of the DVD-ROM drive. Loosening it can be a bit tricky, so you may want to carefully pry each side of the connector with a screwdriver. This technique is better than yanking on it with your fingers in such a narrow space. After you have disconnected both cables, put them aside so they won't get in the way of the tray as you lift it out (see Figure 2.38).

39

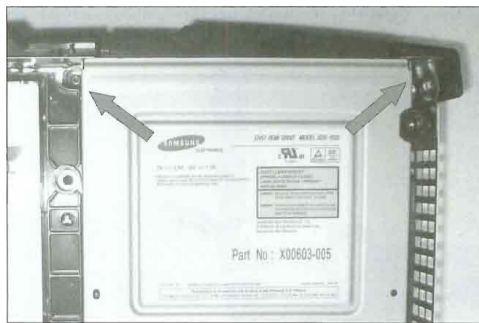


FIGURE 2.33 The two screws holding down the DVD-ROM frame.



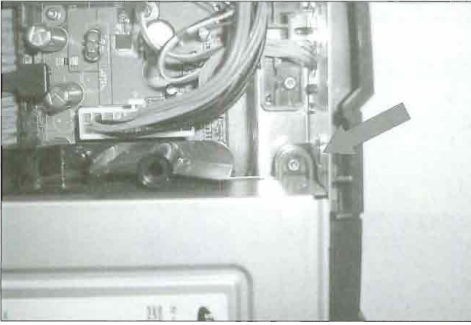


FIGURE 2.34 The left screw holding down the DVD-ROM drive.

### Pulling the DVD-ROM Drive

You can now lift the DVD-ROM drive and tray out of the Xbox case. It should just lift right out, no prying required. Don't be hesitant to handle the equipment, but at the same time, if something

### 40 Disassembling Your Xbox

doesn't come loose easily, don't force it because it is easy to forget to loosen a screw here and there v'see Figure 2.39).

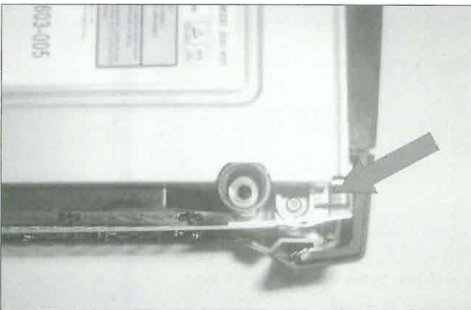


FIGURE 2-35 The right screw holding down the DVD-ROM drive.

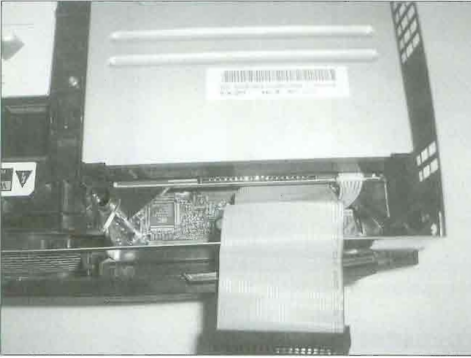


FIGURE 2.36 The back of the DVD-ROM drive, showing the IDE and power cables.

Removing the DVD ROM Drive 41

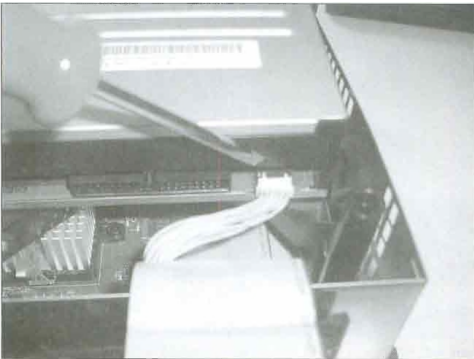


FIGURE 237 Removing the DVD-ROM drive power connector.



FIGURE 2.3£ Moving the cables out of the way.

CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox



riCURE 2.3<

Lifting the DVD-ROM drive and tray out of the Xbox case.

The DVD-ROM drive is actually attached to the frame/tray with two small tabs (see Figure 2.40).

By gently pulling the DVD-ROM unit out while prying the sides of the tray outward, you can disengage the drive from the tray, as shown in Figure 2.41. You probably will not need to separate the drive from the i ray for any practical purpose, unless perhaps your DVD-ROM drive has broken and you are replacing it with a unit from another Xbox.

—  
> U.  
‡  
1  
.  
,

FIGURE 2.40 The complete DVD-ROM drive and tray unit.



FIGURE 2,41 Disengaging the DVD-ROM drive from the tray.

## Removing the Motherboard

The Xbox motherboard is the key component of the console and will be of the most interest to you, primarily as you learn to install a mod chip. First, why would you want to remove the motherboard? If you have a revision 1.5 or 1.6 Xbox, you will need to do some soldering to install a mod chip, and that is accomplished with the motherboard removed (the mod chip is soldered

on the reverse side). There is also the possibility that your Xbox motherboard has been destroyed and must be replaced. This could happen in a thunderstorm, for instance, due to a lightning strike or other form of power surge. For this reason, I strongly suggest using a high-amperage surge protector with 3,500 amps or more of blocking protection (which is enough to stop anything short of an Electro Magnetic Pulse (RMP), relatively speaking).

## CAUTION

Remember, voltage won't kill you; amperage will. You can withstand direct contact with a 20,000 volt power line if it has only a few milliamps of juice flowing through it! Think of water flowing through a pipe. Voltage is the depth of water, while current (amperage) is the speed the water is flowing. You can float in a lot of water, but unless it's flowing quickly, you won't be swept away.

## Disassembling Your Xbox

Figure 2.42 shows an Xbox with a revision 1.4 motherboard. This is a very solid revision because it has a few refinements from the original Xbox (1.0 or 1.1), in addition to some manufacturing improvements introduced in 1.2 and 1.3. Note that 1.4 is the last revision that will accept a solderless mod chip (at the time of this writing).

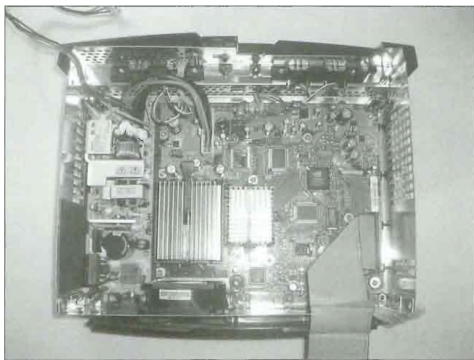


FIGURE 2.42 A revision 1.3 Xbox motherboard, still in the case.

If you have a 1.5 or later revision, I honestly recommend that you buy a used Xbox motherboard with an earlier revision. In Chapter 11, "Replacing the Xbox Case/" I will show you how to completely swap out your old case for a new case, so you will have all the instructions you need in this book to do a motherboard replacement if necessary. However, if that is not an option, don't worry; I still cover a full soldered mod chip install in Chapter 6, "Installing a Soldered Mod Chip."

### Removing the IDE Cable and DVD-ROM Power Connectors

Now, let's remove the IDE and DVD-ROM power connectors (the hard drive power connector is soldered to the power supply, so you will just have to move it aside). Both cables simply pull out of their slots on the motherboard. Just be cautious and don't pry too hard. Small, easy, gentle (usually back-and-forth) motion will free the cable and power connector (see Figures 2.43 and 2.44).

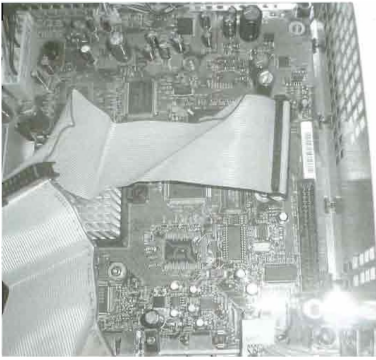


FIGURE 2.43 Removing the IDE cable from the motherboard.

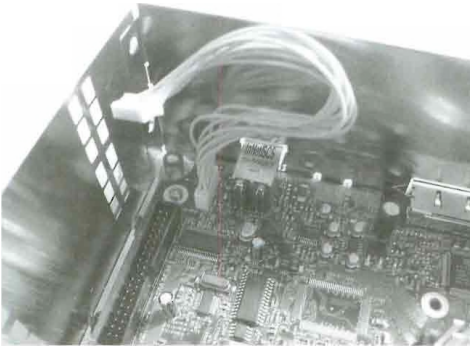


FIGURE 2.44 Removing the DVD-ROM power connector from the motherboard.

46

## CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox

### Removing the Motherboard Power Supply Connector

Be very careful around the power supply supply (as well as the CPU and GPU heatsinks) if you have recently operated your Xbox because the power supply components will be extremely hot!

Next, lets focus our attention on the power supply connector for the motherboard. This connector comes from the power supply, which

is located on the right side of the motherboard, screwed into the case. I will explain how to remove the power supply in Chapter 11 (on replacing the case).

Locate the power supply connector by referring to Figure 2.45. You remove the power supply connector by pressing the clip tab with your finger while pulling upward on the connector that is mounted to the motherboard fitting. This is identical to an ATX motherboard power connector in a PC (see Figure 2.46).

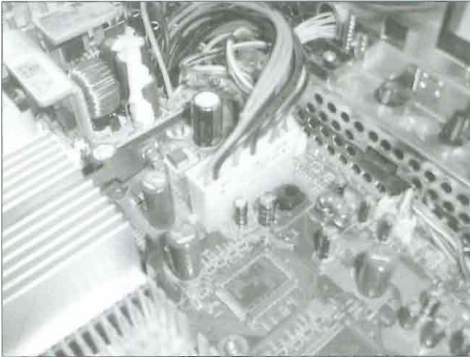


FIGURE 2.45 Locating the power supply connector on the motherboard.

After you have disengaged the motherboard power supply connector, lay it aside so the motherboard can be removed, as shown in Figure 2.47.

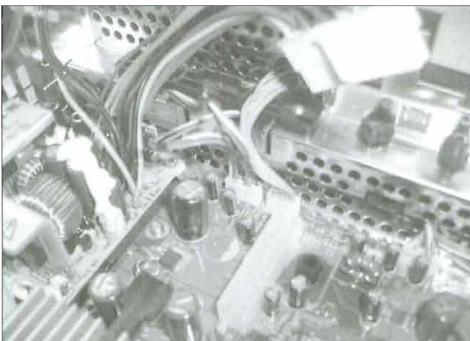
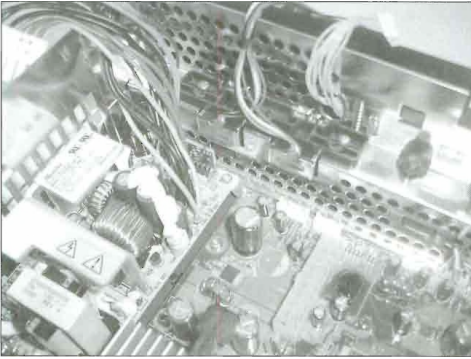


FIGURE 2.46 Removing the motherboard power supply connector.



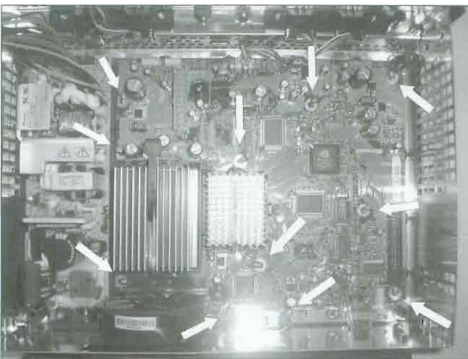
Moving the motherboard power supply connector aside.

48

## CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox

### Removing the Motherboard Screws

Eleven Torx screws are used to mount the motherboard to the case. Refer to Figure 2.48 for the location of all the screws and then remove all 11 screws using your Torx tool. Figure 2.49 shows a close-up image of the motherboard with the screws already removed.



**FIGURE 2.48** The location of the 11 screws holding down the Xbox motherboard.



## Unplugging the Controller Port Cables

Two connectors each handle two of the controller ports on the front of the Xbox, as shown in Figure 2.50. The controller ports are connected to the motherboard using two small plugs at the inside front side of the Xbox. The four controller ports.

first, locate the controller port connectors on the motherboard, as shown in Figure 2.51, and gently pry them free with your fingers, as shown in Figure 2.52.

The final result is shown in Figure 2.53. Note the screws are loosened but not yet removed. Be careful when removing the screws by hand because you do not want to damage the motherboard

49

with an electrostatic discharge, which can occur especially if you are standing on carpet or other static-inducing material.

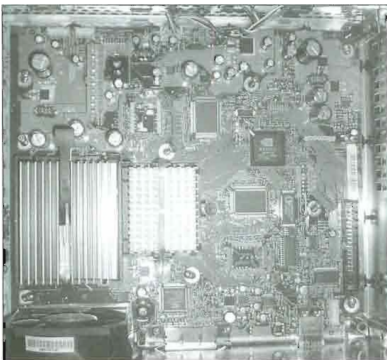


FIGURE 2.49 Close-up of the Xbox motherboard, showing the screws that have been removed.



FIGURE 2.50 The four controller ports.

You should wear an antistatic wrist strap or ground yourself repeatedly while working with any electronics. You can ground yourself by touching a large (preferably unpainted) metal object, although just using an antistatic wrist strap is safer. Be sure to store the screws in a safe place so that they won't get lost! See Figure 2.54.

## 50 CHAPTER Disassembling Your Xbox



FIGURE 2.51 The controller port plugs on the motherboard.



FIGURE 2.52 Removing a controller plug from the motherboard.

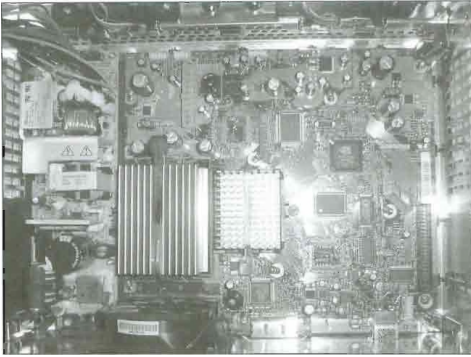


FIGURE 2-53 The Xbox motherboard is mostly stripped and almost ready to be removed.

FIGURE 2.54 The 11 motherboard screws should be stored in a safe place.

52

## CHAPTER 2 Disassembling Your Xbox

### Removing the Case Fan

The Xbox case fan is powered by a small power cable that attaches to the motherboard, as shown in Figure 2.55. Simply pull up on the fan power wires to remove the connector from the motherboard.

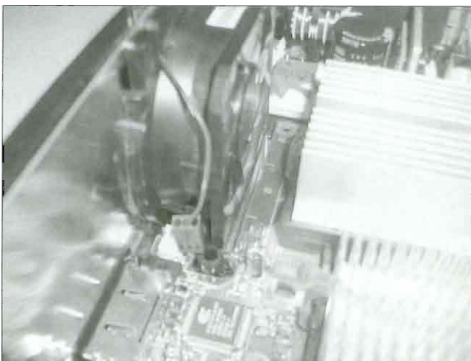


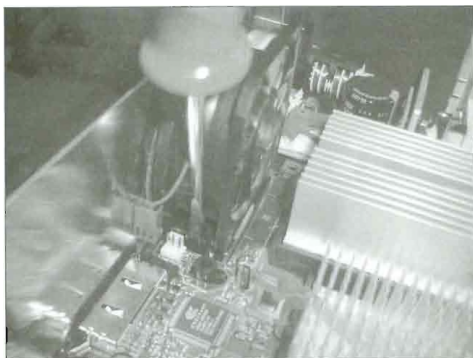
FIGURE 2,55 The Xbox case fan must be removed prior to removing

the motherboard.

Removing the fan itself is a bit more tricky. Take a look at Figure 2.56. The easiest way to get the fan out is to use a screwdriver to pry the fan mounting tabs away from the fan and then gently remove it using a back-and-forth motion. You will have to switch the screwdriver from one side of the fan to the other to free the fan of both tabs.

### Removing the Motherboard

You are now (finally!) ready to lift the motherboard out of the case. Simply grab hold of the CPU heatsink and lift the motherboard. I advise against using a screwdriver or any other tool on the motherboard itself because a simple twitch of the hand can cause the tool to scratch the leads on the motherboard, rendering it unusable. So, be careful at this point! See Figure 2.57.



E 2.56 Pry the fan mounting tabs away from the fan to lift it out of the case.

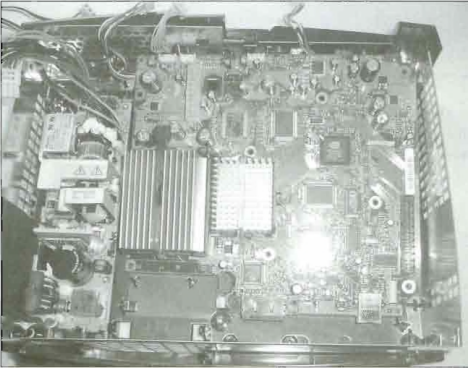


FIGURE 2.57 Lifting the motherboard out of the Xbox case.

54

### Disassembling Your Xbox

You will quickly notice that the motherboard needs to be pulled toward the front of the Xbox to clear the video and network ports on the back of the Xbox. Simply lift the motherboard while pulling it toward the front of the Xbox. If all goes well, your Xbox should look like the one shown in Figure 2.58.

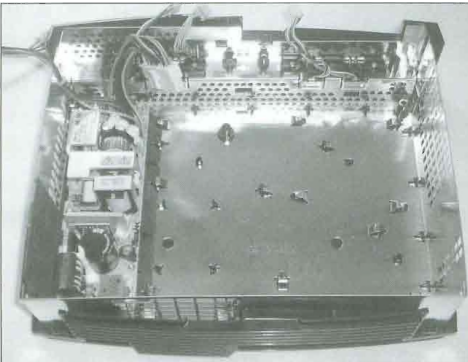
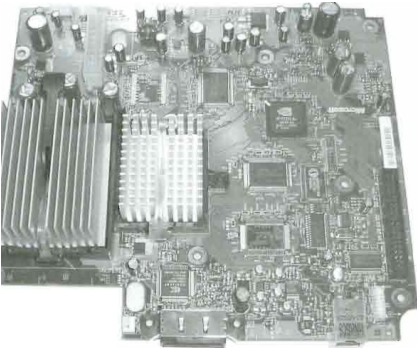


FIGURE 2,58 The motherboard has been removed from the Xbox case.

Figure 2.59 shows the Xbox motherboard after it has been removed from the case, and Figure 2.60 shows the bottom side of the

motherboard. You will get to know the motherboard layout more personally if you have a late-model Xbox (which requires a soldered mod chip—more on that in Chapter 6).

## Removing the Motherboard 5 5



The Xbox motherboard is dominated by the CPU/GPU heatsinks.

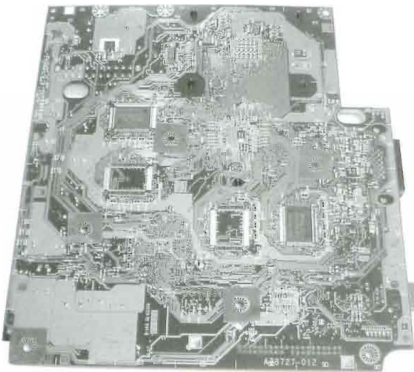


FIGURE 2,60 The bottom side of the Xbox motherboard.

## 56 ;r 2 Disassembling Your Xbox

### Summary

If you are planning on installing a mod chip (which is probably a

good bet if you are reading this book!), you should leave your Xbox disassembled at this point because you will need it open for the next few chapters.

## Identifying Your Xbox Revision

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- \* Revision notes

- « Methods of identification

- Special/limited edition exceptions

This chapter will help you to perform the all-important step of identifying which version of the Xbox you own. This step is critical in determining what type of mod chip you will need for your Xbox and what you must do install a mod chip (covered in the next two chapters).

### Revision Notes

Before I explain how to identify your Xbox, let's discuss each of the seven revisions that have been produced at the time of this writing.

#### 1.0

The first Xbox, 1.0, was produced in Hungary and Mexico in early to mid-2001. This version was unique in that it featured an active cooling unit (heatsink plus fan) on the GPU. The DVD-ROM was made by Thomson (see Figure 3.1), and the hard drive by Seagate (see Figure 3.2). This first version used the Conexant video chip, which was carried through revision 1.3.

#### i.i

The first revision to the Xbox, 1.1, did away with the GPU fan, leaving only a heatsink. This revision was manufactured in Mexico and China. This version also used the Conexant video chip.

## CHAPTER 3 Identifying Your Xbox Revision

### 1.2

The second revision to the Xbox, 1.2, was an incremental update with some different hardware used in some factories. The Philips DVDROM drive (see Figure 3.3) replaced the Thomson in most of the 1.2 units. Some units featured a Western Digital hard drive (see Figure 3.4) more often than the Seagate. This version also used the Conexant video chip.

### 1.3

The third revision, 1.3, along with 1.4, seems to be the most common, so it may have been produced in the greatest quantities. This version saw the introduction of the Samsung DVD-ROM drive (see Figure 3.5), although Thomson and Philips models were still used throughout the production life of the Xbox in lesser quantities. This version also introduced a second Seagate drive (10GB) in some units (see Figure 3.6). This version also used the Conexant video chip.

### 1.4

The fourth revision, 1.4, was also produced in great quantities and was perhaps the most produced version of all. Manufactured exclusively in China, 1.4 saw the introduction of yet another Western Digital hard drive (see Figure 3.7), and featured the Samsung DVD-ROM in most cases (though not all). This version





FIGURE 3-1 Thomson DVD-ROM unit.



FIGURE 3.2 First Seagate hard drive used in the Xbox.



FIGURE 33 The Philips DVD-ROM drive.

## Revision Notes

59

is identifiable by the use of a Focus video chip, the first change in the video chip since the Xbox was first introduced.

1.5

Revision 1.5 has an interesting story associated with it, though none of this information is official. Apparently, this version was produced only for a short period of time at the factory in China before it was pulled from production, and manufacturing reverted back to revision 1.4. One might assume that there was some sort of mistake in the initial production runs for 1.5 that was not detected right away. For whatever reason, both factories in China and Taiwan switched back to producing 1.4. Revision 1.5 might have seen only limited production afterward because the development of revision 1.6 came soon after. Therefore, the manufacturing date alone is not a reliable factor for determining the revision. Revision 1.5 also used the Focus video chip, and was otherwise similar to 1.4. Many mod

chip makers doubt even the existence of the 1.5, believing it to be a refurbished version of 1.4 motherboards with changes made to the LPC to prevent modding. This revision is exceedingly rare, if it exists at all.

1.6

The sixth revision, 1.6, was a radical departure from prior versions with



c

;;;!

1



FIGURE 3.4 The first Western Digital hard drive used in Xbox.



FIGURE 3.S The Samsung DVD-ROM drive.

A — C 4



M

\* —

FIGURE 3.6 The second Seagate hard drive.

## CHAPTER 3 Identifying Your Xbox Revision

\*



&lt;S - \*v



FIGURE 3,7

## NOTE

The second Western Digital hard drive (10CB).

major changes in the Xbox motherboard. The TSOP chip containing the Xbox BIOS is no longer flashable (that is, updateable), meaning the usual soft hacks/exploits are not possible, and the BIOS cannot be flashed. Microsoft also removed power and data lines from the LPC expansion port utilized by mod chips, requiring extra effort to install a mod chip in this version. A new video chip, known as Xcalibur (with an Xbox logo), was also used in this revision. The apparent changes were meant to make the 1.6 motherboard more compact.

## Methods of Identification

There is no single method of identifying your Xbox revision with 100% accuracy, but by using three well-tested methods together, you will be able to determine the version of your Xbox with certainty. The methods are as follows. It is best to perform all of these tests because Microsoft doesn't print the revision number on the Xbox (that would make it too easy for modders!).

The goal of revision identification is ultimately to determine which type of mod chip you can use, so after you have determined the revision by a single test, it's a pretty safe bet that you have your revision. But just to be cautious, I recommend performing other checks of the revision to be certain.

The Xbox BIOS is stored on an EEPROM (electrically erasable programmable read-only memory) chip so that the binary BIOS image can be updated. Xbox 1.6 BIOS chips are only EPROM, meaning they can be burned once, and after that, these chips are permanently fixed with a BIOS.

## Manufacturing Date

The manufacturing date of an Xbox is just a "suggestion" for the revision. The manufacturing date is printed on the serial number label on the bottom of the Xbox. You can see this label through a hole in the retail box (used for scanning the serial number at the cash register), so you can try to identify the revision without even removing an Xbox from the box (although a used Xbox is probably lacking a retail box in the first place).

The serial number/bar code label on the bottom of the Xbox includes a "MFG. DATE" value in the format YYYY-MM-DD, representing year, month, and day. Table 3.1 will help you to identify your Xbox revision using the manufacturing date (although assembly line and factory appear to be more relevant factors).

TABLE 3\*1 Revision by Manufacturing Date Date Range Revision Location

|                  |
|------------------|
| 01/01/01-10/2002 |
| H1/2002, 04/2003 |
| 03/2003-03/2004  |
| 04/2004-Harwan   |

## Hardware Serial Number

If you are browsing the used Xboxes at your local video game store in the hope that you can buy an older Xbox that will work with your solderless mod chip of choice, you will need to use the serial number version test. But what happens if the manufacturing label has been removed? This is a fairly common occurrence that might have something to do with Xbox owners not wanting to change their Xbox Live accounts (which makes one wonder why they sold

the Xbox in the first place). Here is how you can decode the hardware serial number if it is available:

LNNNNNN YWWFF

where

- L is the number of the production line within the factory.
- NNNNNN is the number of the Xbox produced during the workweek.
- Y is the last digit of the production year.
- WW is the number of the week of the production year.
- FF is the code of the factory where the Xbox was manufactured, according to Table 3.2.

TABLE 3.2 Factory Codes

Factory Location Revision

02 03 05 06

Mexico  
Hungary  
China (or later)  
Taiwan (or later)

Because the factory code method is not very reliable (because there may be some codes missing from this list), let's try another method of identifying your Xbox to narrow things down a bit. See Table 3.3 for a serial number check that is accurate but not very specific. If your code is not shown, I would recommend using the closest code to yours, leaning toward the previous one if there is a value above and below your code.

TABLE 33 Serial Number Check

Revision Number

~~L~~NNNNNN 20WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 21WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 23WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 24WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 25WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 30WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 31WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 32WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 33WFF  
~~L~~NNNNNN 42WFF

Video Chip Verification

If you have used the preceding two checks to narrow down what you think your Xbox revision is, the next two steps will really give you a concrete answer to the question. Assuming you have already opened your Xbox per Chapter 2, "Disassembling Your Xbox" you should look for the video chip. It is located on the motherboard, directly below the video output port on the back of the Xbox (see Figure 3.8). This is another excellent verification of the revision, as Table 3.4 illustrates, and may be considered foolproof.

TABLE 3.4 Video Chip Identification

Video Chip Revision

Conexant 1.0,

Focus 1.4,

Xcalibur 1.6

Methods of Identification

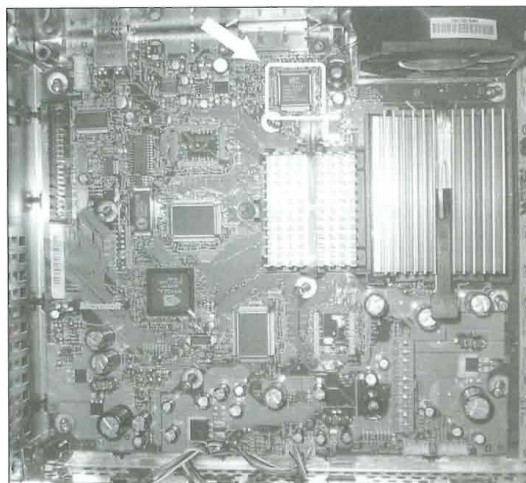


FIGURE 3.8 The location of the video chip on the Xbox motherboard.

### Xbox BIOS Version Number

You can use one final check to verify the Xbox revision that you own (or are considering buying): Look at the BIOS kernel version and dashboard version numbers. To view these numbers, boot the Xbox in dashboard mode (by powering up without a disc in the DVD-ROM drive). Go to Settings and then System Info. A disclaimer will scroll down and will eventually show you two version numbers: a K: value for the kernel and a D: value for the dashboard. You can perform an unscientific check of the revision using Table 3.5.

If you are at a video store, this may be your only way of double-checking the revision. Note that revision 1.0 of the Xbox did not provide these numbers, so if you can't find them, it is definitely a 1.0. Nevertheless, I will include the 1.0 kernel version in Table 3.5. Some kernel versions may not be shown in this list; if yours is not shown, you can base it on the nearest version to yours. Along with the other noninvasive tests, this should give you a clear idea about the revision for a particular Xbox.

## TABLE 3.5 BIOS Kernel Versions

### Xbox Revision Kernel Version

1.0 3944,4034,4036,4627

1.1 4817,4972 1.2-1.5 5101,5713 1.6 5838

### Special/Limited Edition Exceptions

Microsoft has released several special versions of the Xbox that you should know about because they may (or may not) conform to the guidelines presented in the preceding sections. More than likely they do, but if you own a special or limited edition Xbox, you will be able to quickly and easily identify the revision. The special/limited editions were produced at a single plant for a short time, so they are all identical in hardware.

#### Halo Special Edition

If you own the Halo Special Edition Xbox with a translucent green case (see Figure 3.9), your Xbox is a revision 1.2. If you want to verify the revision, you can check the production numbers. This Halo SE Xbox was manufactured only in China, during weeks 8 and 9 of 2003, on the manufacturing lines 2, 5, and 6! (How's that for detail?). In other words, if you have a Halo SE Xbox, the serial number should look like one of the following:

2NNNNNN 3WW05 5NNNNNN 3WW05 6NNNNNN 3WW05

And WW should be 08 or 09. I would like to advise you that it is possible for this version to be manufactured again, in which case you might find a newer Halo SE Xbox.

#### Limited Edition Crystal Pack

The Limited Edition Crystal Pack (shown in Figure 3.10) was a unique and collectible Xbox, released only in Europe to improve sales. If you own this edition, you may be certain that it is revision 1.4. This edition was manufactured in China, in week 6 of 2004, on production line 4. In other words, the serial number should look like this:



## Special/Limited Edition Exceptions

65



FIGURE 3.9 The Halo Special Edition Xbox.



FIGURE 3.10 The Limited Edition Crystal Xbox.

There are rumors that a more recent manufacture of the Crystal Xbox has taken place, and if this is true, then it's possible there might be some of these units with a 1.6 revision motherboard.

## Additional Exceptions

I have encountered some very strange exceptions to the guidelines presented in this chapter, where a motherboard has the telltale signs of two different revisions at the same time. Take Figure 3.11, for example. This Xbox was purchased from a retail store in late 2003, but it has signs of being a 1.0 as well as a 1.1 at the same time. The heatsinks are not shown in this figure, but take my word for it, there was no heatsink fan on the GPU, indicating that this is a 1.1 or later.

However, look at the filled-in LPC holes in this figure, along with that very strange sticker on the motherboard, spelling out clearly

that this Xbox has a 4034 kernel. That kernel, according to Table 3.5, should be in a 1.0. But here we have what appears to be a 1.0 with no heatsink fan. This is very strange, indeed! Expect to find exceptions to the rule like this case, which is not a problem at all because any 1.0 to 1.4 Xbox will accept a solderless mod chip adapter (which is all that matters).

66

## CHAPTER 3 Identifying Your Xbox Revision

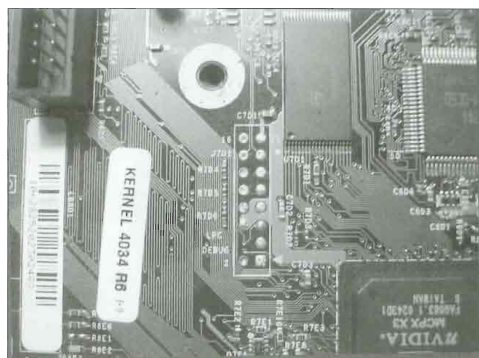


FIGURE 3«1 1 This unusual 1.0 has no fan on the GPU heatsink (not shown).

### Summary

This chapter should help you to identify your Xbox while browsing serial numbers of used Xbox consoles at a store or via eBay or other online sites. If you already own an Xbox, the additional tables and figures will help you to determine exactly which Xbox revision you own.

Much of the information in this chapter was found online at [www.xbox-linux.org](http://www.xbox-linux.org) and [www.xbox-scene.com](http://www.xbox-scene.com). I would like to thank the owners and users of these sites for the valuable information they provided.

## PART

### Mod Chips

CHAPTER 4 Introduction to Xbox Modding CHAPTER 5 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip CHAPTER 6 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

#### Introduction to Xbox Modeling

This chapter is an introduction to Xbox modeling, revealing all the information you need to know about mod chips so that you can choose a mod chip that is suitable for your needs. You will learn what a mod chip is and what it can do; plus, you will get an overview of the major Xbox mod chips that are available.

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- What is a mod chip?
- What can you do with a mod chip?
- Overview of available mod chips
- Before you install a mod chip

#### What Is a Mod Chip?

Mod chips are small electronic devices that are incorporated into the electronics of a video game console, thus "modifying" the basic functionality of the console. The most common reason for installing a mod chip is to make it possible to boot up CDs or DVDs that are encoded for other regions. For example, if you purchase imported DVD movies that are encoded for a different region and video format, a mod chip will allow you to play these movies (where a standard DVD player will not). Obviously, this new functionality will allow you to purchase import games as well (for instance, Xbox games released only in Japan, if you live in the United States or Europe). There is also an NTSC-J format in Japan.

The internal Xbox architecture is the same for all regions, but an

internal configuration setting specifies the support for region-encoded games and DVD movies (NTSC in the United States) as well as for the PAL format (Europe and

Japan). A mod chip will cause the Xbox to ignore the region and video format and play any game or movie. Table 4.1 shows the region code for each region.

TABLE 4.1 DVD Regions

| Number | Region Name |
|--------|-------------|
|--------|-------------|

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| 0 | No region coding |
|---|------------------|

|   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 | United States and Canada |
|---|--------------------------|

|   |                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Europe, Greece, Turkey, Egypt, Arabia, Japan, and South Africa |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------|

|   |                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Korea, Thailand, Vietnam, Borneo, and Indonesia |
|---|-------------------------------------------------|

|   |                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Australia, New Zealand, Mexico, the Caribbean, and South America |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------|

|   |                                                     |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | India, Africa, Russia, and eastern European nations |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------|

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| 6 | People's Republic of China |
|---|----------------------------|

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| 7 | Unused |
|---|--------|

|   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 8 | Airlines and cruise ships |
|---|---------------------------|

How Does a Mod Chip Work?

When you power up your Xbox with a game in the DVD-ROM drive, the Xbox boots up and then performs a validation check on the game disc to ensure it is a licensed game, produced by an official Microsoft licensee. Before the game starts running, the Xbox authenticates the disc by searching for the correct boot information. If a region-specific code is not found, the Xbox will refuse to play the disc (either a game or movie) because the correct information is

not available.

The mod chip kicks into action at this point. A mod chip such as Xenium will cause the Xbox to ignore the boot information and just start running whatever is on the disc. The mod chip will boot either a game or DVD movie import.

An interesting side effect of the change effected by the mod chip is that Xbox will run anything, not just standard or import discs. A mod chip will allow you to run custom software written for Xbox.

### Are Mod Chips Legal?

As soon as the term "mod chip" is brought up, the obvious question arises like the proverbial elephant in the room: Are mod chips legal?

The simple answer to this question is this; Yes, mod chips are legal, at least in the United States. Those who understand copyright law will immediately realize that a mod chip containing custom

electronics and code is legal. A mod chip may not legal if it uses a proprietary BIOS (such as the one built into the Xbox). Mod chips must include their own custom BIOSes. To drive the point home (future pun intended), allow me to provide you with an analogy.

Are you interested in cars? Chances are good that you are, so you are probably familiar with automobile performance and modification. You have heard about turbochargers, superchargers, and intercoolers, right?

A turbo is basically a device that you add to your car that makes your car capable of being used illegally. A turbo modifies the stock behavior of a car's engine, causing the exhaust to spin a turbine that feeds compressed air into the fuel injectors (or carburetor), greatly increasing torque and horsepower. A supercharger is similar but is powered by the engine's crankshaft with a pulley which turns the turbine that compresses air and forces it into the intake system. These modifications allow you to drive your car faster, which may

lead to speeding violations. In other words, these modifications make it possible for you to break the law. (Of course, a stock car can also break the speed limit, but the intended purpose of a turbo or blower is to speed!). Turbos and blowers are legal as long as your car passes emissions' standards, and as such, many manufacturers will market their aftermarket performance parts as "race-only" or "strip-only" parts, meaning that the manufacturer does not condone the use of such parts on the "street" (that is, on roads that require emissions-legal cars).

## Mod Chip Usage Issues

Like turbos and blowers are legal for cars, a mod chip is legal for a video game console such as Xbox. Why, then, is there so much confusion on the matter? Video game manufacturers don't want you to install a mod chip because it undermines their control of product sales in each region. The bottom line here is that once you have purchased a product, you own it. You did not buy a license to use an Xbox; you did not lease your Xbox. It becomes your property at the time when you purchase it, and you are free to do with it as you wish. That is the fact that confuses many consumers, who somehow believe a video game console is like an album or movie. These products are the intellectual/creative property of the manufacturers or artists who create them; when you purchase a CD or DVD, you are buying the rights to use a copy of that product.

Since you do not own it, you may not make copies to give away or sell because all you have purchased is a right, not a product. That right is called a license. The DVD or CD is just a container for the digital content that you have a license to use. When you buy a game, you have acquired a license to use that game for its intended purpose (to play). Likewise, when you buy a DVD, you own a license that gives you the right to use that product for personal use, but not for a public performance. In other words, the license for a DVD grants you the right to watch it as often as you want, but you may not charge a fee to allow others to watch it. Likewise, you may loan or sell your copy of the license (in the form of the DVD) to others. That distinction is very important and is a serious source of confusion that surrounds the whole issue of intellectual property rights.

## The Difference Between Ownership and License

The key to this whole issue of ownership is not whether someone owns a copyright on a product, but whether someone owns a license to use a product. The physical product is not the license; it is the physical container of the licensed product (digital content in one form or another). When you purchase a DVD movie, you are not buying the "DVD" itself. You are buying a license! When you rent a movie or game from a rental store, that store temporarily assigns ownership of the product to you, for a limited fee. You must return ownership of the product back to the store, by the terms of the rental agreement. If you decide to keep (or lose or damage) the movie or game that you rented, then you must purchase the license outright from the rental store. The store cannot simply make a copy to replace the one that was lost because you were granted ownership of the license for a short period of time. Failure to return it incurred the cost of purchasing the product.

That is the reason it is illegal for a store to rent a copy of a DVD to you; doing so results in two copies of the licensed product: the original and the copy. The store might archive the movie away in a storage room and claim that it is not being used at the same time as the copy; however, that is not how copyright law works. The licensed product may be held by only a single entity (individual or company) at a time. When you rent that DVD movie or video game, the store actually loses that product and relies on your returning it in order to rent it again. Loss of the product requires the store to purchase a new copy.

Now, terminology is a very important issue because much of the confusion in copyright law is due to improper use of the terminology related to this issue. When you say that you own a "copy" of a movie, that is incorrect. If you purchase a new DVD movie, you own a license of that digital product. For instance, I just "bought" Aladdin on DVD. It's one of my favorite animated films. I often incorrectly tell friends, "I bought Aladdin. Want to come over and watch it with me?" Disney still owns Aladdin. I just bought a license that gives me the right to watch this film whenever I want. But the tendency is to use incorrect grammar to describe the

situation. Not that this is a big deal, but it does tend to affect one's perception of the bigger issue.

### What Can You Do with a License?

Here is the critical issue at hand: When you own a license, you may transfer the digital product from one medium to another if you wish. You may even copy the medium and destroy the original if you wish. Why? Because you own a license of that product, not a license of the physical media on which it is stored. Unfortunately, without the original medium, proving that you are still the original licensee is impossible. Therefore, you must keep the original medium even if it is damaged, as proof that you own the license. If your favorite DVD is scratched beyond use, you are within your rights to use your backup copy, as long as you keep the original.

### What Is a Mod Chip? 73

Let's discuss a scenario that may happen. Suppose you purchase a music CD. You really love this band, so you listen to the CD every day in your car as well as at home. Over time, the CD becomes scratched and begins to affect the quality of playback; eventually, the CD is no longer playable due to scratches on the surface (maybe you are careless with it?). Your only recourse is to purchase a new copy of the CD. By doing so, you have discarded your old license and acquired a new one. But there is a better solution. Instead of using the original CD that your licensed product is stored on, you can make a copy of that CD and then store the original in the retail case, kept in like-new condition in your music collection. Doing this is legal as long as only one copy is used at a time by you and you alone.

Therefore, you may not make two copies of the CD (for instance, one copy for your car, another for your home CD player) because that would involve the use of two licensed products. You will need to use the same copy in your car and home CD players, but not two copies. That is illegal! Further, because you are getting twice the enjoyment out of the product, you are ripping off the artists who created the music in the first place by paying them for a single



license, while using two licenses.

Now let's see how copyright law affects your use of video games. It is illegal to download and play emulated arcade games with an emulator program such as MAME (Multiple Arcade Machine Emulator), unless you own a license for those games. Do you have the original arcade cabinets? If not, it is illegal to play emulated games! Of course, how practical is this argument? Practicality is of no concern to copyright law; unless you own a license, you may not use a product. If you own an old NES console with a huge game collection, it is perfectly legal for you to run an emulator on your PC or Xbox to be able to play those games. Where you acquire the ROMs is irrelevant because intended use follows the copyright law: You own the cartridges; therefore, you may legally play those games on any hardware device you wish (just as you may watch a DVD on any television set, using any DVD player). Not every license is the same, though, as there are some cases where the license specifically states that you may run one copy on the intended hardware.

### The Modeled Xbox

An Xbox mod chip makes the Xbox behave more like a PC than a limited-use video game console. PC games are installed to the hard drive to speed up load times (while most PC games require you to at least insert the retail CD into the CD-ROM drive to verify ownership of the game). Likewise, you can install your Xbox games onto the Xbox hard drive and play them legally from that location, with or without verification. A mod chip allows you to do this, and it is legal to do so. In the same vein, you may load your music CDs and movie DVDs to your Xbox hard drive and play them using custom Xbox software, and these practices are also legal.

Why, if these activities are legal, do so many companies object to these practices? Because obeying the law is a voluntary matter, many companies in the movie and video game industries

prefer to enforce the law by limiting your use of their products in the first place, rather than relying on your personal choice to obey the law. This is akin to automobile manufacturers limiting the speed of your car based on the posted speed limits on the highway. Obviously, this is impossible by today's technology (although, perhaps in the future, roads will "tell" your car how fast it should travel and limit your car accordingly).

Manufacturers of digital media would prefer to physically limit your use of their products rather than rely on your personal choices to obey the law. This is a form of commercial control that consumers should discourage whenever possible. Such requirements to obey the law neither foster competition in the marketplace nor encourage innovation. Almost all innovation in the consumer electronics industry is due to consumer demand and utilization, not due to a decision by manufacturers to innovate. As long as consumers continue to purchase a product in large quantities, that manufacturer is under no obligation to innovate. Only by threat of competition will a company innovate (although new features may be introduced to foster even more sales). But when the entire industry agrees to force behavior on consumers, that leads to the centralized control of the marketplace, which is called a cartel

No company has the right to disable a music CD or MP3 file after you have encoded it for digital playback from your PC's hard drive. This is a criminal act on the part of the company that created the playback software (and continues to operate only due to a lack of opposition). You have every right to encode a music CD onto your hard drive and listen to it however you wish. It is not up to manufacturers to enforce the law, just as it is not up to automobile manufacturers to enforce the posted speed limits.

You must understand what your rights are so that you will be able to enjoy the products you have purchased without breaking the law. Microsoft has every right to modify the architecture of the Xbox to thwart the activities of mod chip makers, which, in turn, have every right to modify their mod chips to suit. An automobile manufacturer has the same right to modify an engine to thwart the aftermarket car performance industry (although manufacturers usually support the aftermarket).

## Why the DMCA Does More Harm Than Good

What about the Digital Millennium Copyright Act? The DMCA has been chosen as a defense by many digital content providers to thwart legal utilization of licensed digital products. The CSS encryption algorithm used in DVD movies is one such example. Cracking CSS was not an Ulegal act, but the DMCA was used to prosecute the individual(s) who cracked CSS—and the algorithm is now widely shared on the Internet. The DMCA was created through lobbying of lawmakers in the United States and should be feared by consumers because it has been repeatedly abused in violation of individual rights and has thwarted innovation and competition in the marketplace.

## What Can You Do with a Mod Chip? 75

If a company has millions of dollars available for an extended legal battle, can any individual afford to defend himself/herself, even if the plaintiff is in the wrong? Of course not! That is the travesty of the DMCA: It was invented by companies involved in the production of digital products, who know full well that no individual has the ability to defend himself/herself legally (unless class action can be brought to bear, which is almost impossible on the defending side of a case).

I am a consumer with as varied a level of interests as anyone else. I enjoy the digital products that are created by talented and creative people; however, I disagree with the methods imposed by the manufacturers and publishers of the digital content that I otherwise enjoy. I respect the artists and filmmakers but dislike the predatory behavior of their publishers. Therefore, my desire is to purchase and use licensed products in a legal manner so that the DMCA and otiiar laws cannot be used against me.

I love to play games, listen to music, and watch movies. This is a serious pastime that I enjoy on a daily basis. Therefore, I support the talented people who create these products by purchasing their products (or rather, licenses thereof). The legalities of hardware devices go away when you are the legal owner of every licensed

digital product that you use. If you do own every game that you play, no argument will ever be made against you on proper use of those digital resources. I understand that some consumers use digital products illegally; however, their numbers are not as extensive as reported by agencies such as Recording Industry Association of America (RIAA). Laws and hardware/software schemes are putting unnecessary limits on the majority of legal consumers due to the illegal acts of a minority.

### What Can You Do with a Mod Chip?

One of the coolest things you can do with your modded Xbox is run homebrew software such as Xbox Media Center or a custom version of Linux. Some homebrew software was supposedly compiled with official Microsoft tools outside the realm of the official development process. There is also an open source Xbox Development Kit (OpenXDK) in the works (meaning it is not completely functional and fully featured yet) that has been used by homebrew developers to come up with some fantastic applications and games for Xbox.

### Xbox Media Center (XBMC)

Xbox Media Center is an open source project at [www.xboxmediacenter.de](http://www.xboxmediacenter.de) and hosted on SourceForge.net. XBMC turns your Xbox into a media center PC and looks similar to the Media Center edition of Windows (see Figure 4.1). With XBMC, you can view digital photos, play video files (such as AVI and MPEG2), play audio files (such as MP3 and WMA), and even launch games.

## CHAPTER 4 Introduction to Xbox Modeling

Xbox Media Center is my absolute favorite Xbox application because it really allows me to do what I've always wanted to do: bridge the gap between my entertainment center and my PC. I have never liked the "multimedia PCs" and "media center PCs" available at retail because these hybrid devices are too much PC and not enough media center, by trying to satisfy both camps at the same

time. Xbox Media Center completely nails the solution by being easy to use; able to link to the PC LAN; and able to connect to the Internet for updates, skins, and application downloads. It is totally awesome. Truth be told, I have two Xbcxscs, each equipped with 250GB hard drives. One sits on a shelf in my entertainment center, controlled with the Xbox DVD remote control, running XBMC. My other modded Xbox is used just for playing games.



TM TM  
, fc»,  
My Programs  
My Music  
iKtiires  
-MyVtchra  
Myfiles  
Weather  
Settings  
9^  
^ 00:14  
Alive And Kit kin

FIGURE 4.1 Xbox Media Center.

## Homebrew Cannes

One of the most interesting things you can do with a modded Xbox is run homebrew games created by an enthusiastic and creative Xbox development community that functions outside the normal "licensed" retail realm. Many games already available for Xbox will probably never see a retail shelf, but that doesn't mean they will go unappreciated. Thanks to a mod chip, you can enjoy these homebrew games. Figure 4.2 shows a game called xBomberbox2, a homebrew game inspired by Bomberman. This is just one example of the many scores of homebrew Xbox games available on the Web.

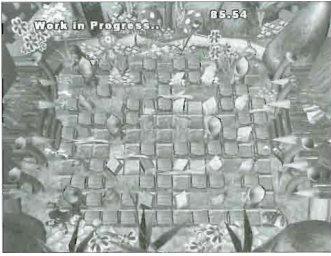


FIGURE 4.2 xBomberbox2 is a homebrew Xbox game.

## Overview of Available Mod Chips

Many mod chips available for Xbox date back to early 2002. The earliest mod chips (such as Enigmah and LPC) work with only the first few Xbox revisions, which is fine if you own an early Xbox (usually 1.0, 1.1, or 1.2), but will not work with later revisions. The war, it seems, between Microsoft and the mod chip manufacturers achieved something of a stalemate when Xbox 1.6 was released, which pretty much wiped out the mod chip community with its significant architectural changes. However, the persistent mod chip makers soon found ways to adapt their most recent mod chips to support 1.6. The only drawback to owning a revision 1.6 is that even the solderless mod chips require some soldering because Microsoft removed the power source and some of the data Lines from the usual connections relied upon by the mod chips. So, if you have a latemodel Xbox, you can still use a "solderless" mod chip, but you will have to solder a couple of wires to reattach the power source to the LPC (an expansion port on the motherboard that mod chips are connected to).

The obvious question arises as you are reading this section: Where can I buy a mod chip? I will not give you any links in this book because the Web is so dynamic. You will not find a mod chip in a retail electronics or video game store. Instead, I recommend that you perform a simple Web search for any of the mod chips listed in the following sections of this chapter using Google, Yahoo, or another search engine. My only recommendation is

## CAUTION

I recommend against sending your Xbox to a modder for mod chip

installation. Many are honest and reliable, but some are not; you may never see your Xbox again. It is best to learn how to install your own mod chip!

78

## Introduction to Xbox Madding

that you do a little research before you slap down the cash, to be sure you don't place an order with a disreputable fly-by-night online store. It is best to browse a site for historical news items or an online forum to see how long the site has been around. Chances are, if a mod chip supplier has been around for at least a year, the store is probably reputable. If you are at all concerned, contact the store owner and ask a few questions (such as which mod chip he/she recommends) to determine the person's knowledge of Xbox modding before sending any money. You may also want to search a mod chip manufacturer's own recommended list of suppliers, usually available from the manufacturer's website.

## Xenium

Xenium, shown in Figure 4.3, is a very nice mod chip with a lot of built-in features and attractive and fully featured O/S. One such feature is an 8-bank flash memory chip for storing multiple BIOS images inside the Xenium (allowing you to boot many different dashboards and BIOS revisions that you need). Like Xecuter and SmartXX, Xenium can clone the stock hard drive onto a new hard drive, with full hard drive lock code transfer. Xenium has a built-in LED that you can customize to show in several different colors based on the BIOS bank that is running (with an included external LED for attaching to the front of your Xbox). Xenium also supports an LCD display panel.

Xenium is extremely easy to configure due to a built-in FTP server. Using your PC, you can connect to Xenium and transfer a new BIOS and dashboard to the Xbox directly via LAN. An optional USB flash stick is also available for installing new BIOSes and dashboards without using a LAN connection. The Xenium is easy to install via

solderless adapter or soldered pin header. Xenium has many more features built into the Xenium O/S.

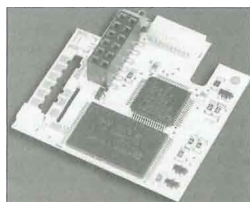


FIGURE 43

Xenium mod chip created by Team Xodus, [www.teamxodus.com](http://www.teamxodus.com).

### Xecuter

The Xecuter3 mod chip, shown in Figure 4.4, is produced by TeamXecuter; you can find details about this mod chip at [www.teamxecuter.com](http://www.teamxecuter.com).

## Overview of Available Mod Chips

79

Xecuter3 is one of the most feature-rich mod chips available, which includes an LCD display that you can affix to the front of your Xbox for use with XBMC to display the current media file being played. X3 includes a hard drive activity LED, network activity LED, and in the opinion of one Xbox modder, "is more complex than the Xbox itself" The only drawback to this feature-rich mod chip is that it does not work with a solderless adapter and must therefore be soldered (via a pin header). (However, an Xecuter Lite chip with solderless adapter is available.) This is an advanced mod chip for experienced modders and is a good choice for an Xbox that will be used mainly as a media center or for homebrew development. Like Xenium and SmartXX, Xecuter3 can clone the stock hard drive onto a new hard drive, with full hard drive lock code transfer. Xecuter has many additional features built into the O/S.

### SmartXX



SmartXX, shown in Figure 4.5, is another excellent mod chip for experienced modders who want loads of functionality in a small package. SmartXX has an optional LCD and is pin-compatible with the Xecuter on LCD support.

SmartXX can clone the stock Xbox hard drive partitions to a new (larger) hard drive, like the Xecuter and Xenium. SmartXX also supports networking, with the ability to install BIOSes and dashboards via FTP using your PC, and it has many additional features built into the O/S.

## XBIT

The XBIT mod chip, shown in Figure 4.6, supports Xbox revisions 1.0 to 1.5 (but does not support 1.6). This older mod chip works well with older Xboxes and is easy to install because the mod chip has built-in

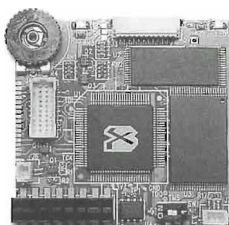


FIGURE 4.4 Xecuter3 mod chip created by

TeamXecuter, [www.teamxecuter.com](http://www.teamxecuter.com).

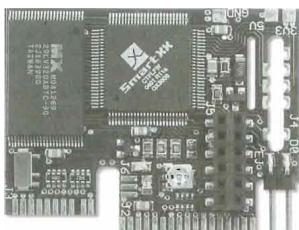


FIGURE 4.5 SmartXX mod chip is created by the SmartXX team, [www.smartxx.com](http://www.smartxx.com).

## CHAPTER 4 Introduction to Xbox Modeling

spring-loaded pins and screw holes allowing you to screw the mod chip directly onto the motherboard without a solderless adapter.

### Aladdin

The Aladdin mod chip, shown in Figure 4.7, is a solder-only solution that comes with an optional flash programmer (for upgrading the mod chip BIOS) and is a low-cost mod chip that may appeal to those wanting a no-nonsense modification to their Xbox. Aladdin has all the built-in support of the more expensive mod chips but lacks the bells and whistles that raise the cost of other mod chips.

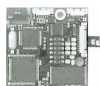


FIGURE 4.6 XB1T mod chip is created by DMS Technologies, [www.dms3.com](http://www.dms3.com).



FIGURE 4.7 Aladdin mod chip.



FIGURE 4.8 X-Chip mod chip.

### XChip

The X-Chip mod chip, shown in Figure 4.8, is another late-generation mod chip that supports Xbox revisions 1.0 to 1.6 and includes a solderless adapter (although Xbox 1.6

requires a minor wire soldering to bring a power source back to the LPC). X-Chip is simple in design and lacks some of the features of

other recent mod chips. X-Chip comes with 4MB of flash memory with plenty of room for storing up to 16 BIOS images, including the Cromwell BIOS (which is Linux-based) that can be upgraded using the included USB programmer.

### Before You Install a Mod Chip...

The fact of the matter is, you can install any type of mod chip that you want and achieve the same basic result of being able to run homebrew games and region-free media on your Xbox. Many different mod chips are available, as you saw in the preceding sections; choosing one over the other entirely depends on which features matter most to you.

I have chosen to go with Xenium because it is a modern mod chip that supports both the latest revision of the Xbox (1.6 at the time of this writing) and the solderless adapter. Some mod chips

### Before You Install a Mod Chip.

#### NOTE

A note on revisions: At the time of this writing, there have been seven (7) revisions to the Xbox, from 1.0 to 1.6. I fully acknowledge that a 1.7 might come out after this book has been published, rendering some discussions in this book out-of-date. The best option is to buy a used Xbox and then use a known mod chip with the feature set you desire. But if you own a latemodel Xbox of revision 1.7 or later (which is not confirmed at this time), just refer to the features offered by the most recent mod chips to see whether they support a new Xbox revision. So, to future-proof this book, I recommend you look up any minor changes required to support new revisions, after which the information in this book is otherwise the same.

have more features, such as the LCD display, but usually require soldering. In my opinion, solderless is a strong feature that is more important. (I go into this issue in more detail in a moment.) As far as features go, you should choose a mod chip that will satisfy your

goals for using your Xbox. If you just need basic functionality, choose a less expensive chip; but if you want features galore, choose a "better" mod chip. Also keep in mind that you will want to identify your Xbox revision before choosing a mod chip because not all of them support the latest revision.

You can do two basic types of installation:

■ Solderless: Simple installation

■ Soldered: Complex installation

The advantage to a solderless mod chip installation kit is that it is relatively easy to install and is not permanent. So, if you buy a new Xbox, you can transfer the mod chip to the new unit. The main drawback to a solderless mod chip is that it can come loose if the Xbox is jarred or dropped (usually a bad thing in any event!), or may come loose from simple vibration while the Xbox is being moved (when you take it to a LAN party, for example). Also, the latest Xbox revisions (1.5 and 1.6) will not work with a solderless adapter due to changes in the motherboard that require some soldering.

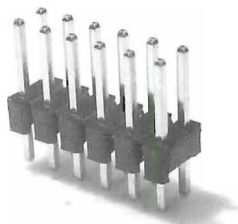
The advantage of a soldered mod chip is that it is solid and sturdy, will not come loose, and is more reliable because the electronic leads are fused rather than simply touching. The soldering work is more difficult than a solderless adapter, but is more professional and longer lasting. If you are serious about Xbox gaming, I recommend soldering a pin header to your Xbox motherboard (covered in the next chapter). Figure 4.9 shows a typical pin header. A pin header will allow you to easily install or remove the mod chip, but the leads will be soldered, so you have convenience and stability. Pin headers are cheap, whereas the mod chip is not, so you can transplant the mod chip if the motherboard ever fails by simply soldering in a new pin header to the new Xbox.

## 82 4 Introduction to Xbox Modeling

If you have never installed a mod chip before, I recommend

performing a solderless install just to get started. You can solder in a pin header later if you really like the mod chip and want to make it pseudo-permanent.

## Summary



This chapter provided an overview of the mod chips available for Xbox, with descriptions of each mod chip, FIGURE 4.9 A typical pin header that is soldered to its capabilities, compatibility, and the Xbox motherboard. features. I hope you have gleaned enough information about the available mod chips from this chapter that you will be able to decide which one you would like to purchase for your Xbox. If you already have a mod chip, you will find the next two chapters of interest, as they explain in detail how to install a solderless as well as soldered mod chip.

## Mod Chip

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- Locating the LPC port
- Locating the DO point
- Fixing a pre-soldered LPC \*
- Installing the solderless adapter
- Installing the mod chip

This chapter explains how to install a mod chip into an Xbox using a solderless adapter. The Xenium chip is used as an example, but most other mod chips are installed in the same exact way that is covered in this chapter. By the time you have completed this chapter, you will know how to install a mod chip for any but the newest revisions of the Xbox (which are covered in the next chapter).

### Solderless Xenium Installation

For the sake of brevity, I have chosen to feature the Xenium chip in this chapter on installing a mod chip (shown already installed in Figure 5.1).

Because all of the mod chips now basically use the same pin header and solderless adapter, the instructions in this section are conveniently applicable to other mod chips. In other words, the main difference is between the solderless pin header and the soldered pin header. I will cover the installation of a solderless pin header along with the Xenium mod chip in this chapter, and the soldered pin header in the next chapter. Figure 5.2 shows the Xenium chip with key components labeled.

## 84 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip

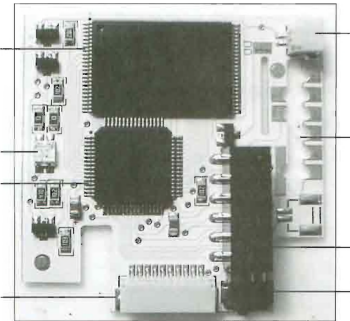


FIGURE 5.1 The Xenium installation is similar for all mod chips.

2MB flash memory

Programmable status LED

Controller logic



Expansion port for external LED or LCD

FIGURE 5.2 Key components of the Xenium mod chip.

Removable DO wire port

Quick solder

wire install

Pin header

Emergency

restore switch

The first step to install a mod chip is to disassemble your Xbox, which I presume you have done already per Chapter 2, "Disassembling Your Xbox." The next step is to identify the version of your

Xbox, per Chapter 3, "Identifying Your Xbox Revision." If you have not read these chapters yet, you will be at a disadvantage as you read on because a lot of vitally important information that you will not want to miss is covered in those two chapters.

There are so many discrepancies and oddities in the manufacture of the Xbox that I have had problems with mod chip installations that should have been straightforward and simple. The most common problem arises when you have a late-model Xbox with architectural changes that have changed the install points of the mod chip or when you have an early motherboard with filled-in LPC points.

### Locating the LPC

The LPC is a port on the Xbox motherboard that is used to update the Xbox BIOS at the factory (see Figure 5.3). The LPC also seems to be used for debugging, which would mean that the same motherboards are used in retail consumer Xboxes as are used in Xbox Development Kits (XDKs). In this case, the LPC has an interface soldered onto it for connecting the "development" version of an Xbox to a PC with the Xbox development tools installed (which would allow a game developer to compile code and run it directly on the Xbox).



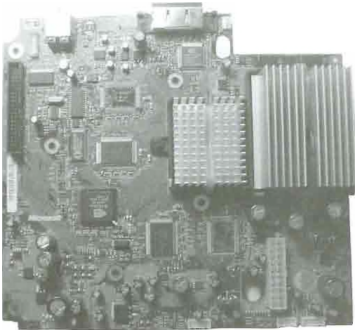


FIGURE 53 The Xbox motherboard—revision 1.3.

Motherboards are mass-produced by the hundreds of thousands, so this inventory stock of motherboards cannot simply be thrown out when a new BIOS upgrade is developed. At least, that was the theory until 1.6 was developed with a static (not flashable) BIOS, which put the hobby modders out of business.

86

## CHAPTER 5 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip

Although you can use an aftermarket mod chip on a 1.6 Xbox, the built-in BIOS on the Xbox motherboard itself can no longer be flashed. In "the old days" modders would actually just flash the Xbox BIOS itself rather than use a mod chip! Pretty crazy, isn't it? Microsoft killed that practice by making many changes to the 1.6 motherboard, by modifying the LPC and using a readonly BIOS. The good news is that 1.6 (and later) owners can still mod their Xboxes, but a little extra work is required (as noted later in this chapter).

### LPC Port on 1.0-1-1 Motherboard

The LPC port is shown in Figure 5.4 for Xbox revisions 1.0 and 1.1. As you can see, the LPC points are pre-soldered! This is fairly common for revision 1.1 but doesn't seem to have been done on any other revisions. I think it's possible that this was Microsoft's first attempt to block mod chips that used the LPC, by filling the LPC holes. However, the modders then started using the filled holes as

tinning for soldering wires directly to the LPC—which was actually easier!—so the change was not done in 1.2 or later versions. It appears that some 1.0 motherboards also featured the pre-soldered LPC holes. In either case, you will have to remove the solder from the LPC holes before you can install a mod chip (solderless or otherwise). The alternative is to do a wired installation, but this is just as difficult as removing the solder from the LPC points, so I recommend the latter solution. See the section "Fixing a Pre-Soldered LPC" later in this chapter for details.

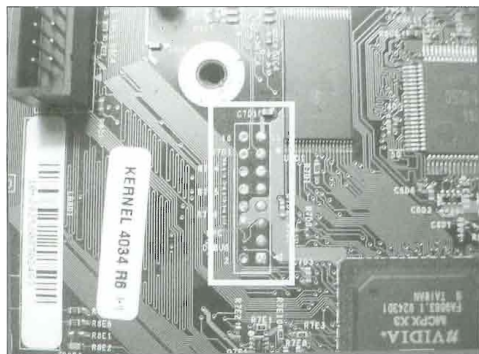


FIGURE 5.4 The LPC port on an Xbox 1.0-1.1.

87

## LPC Port on 1.2-1.6 Motherboard

The LPC port is in the same location on an Xbox revision 1.2 or later as it is for 1.0 and 1.1, but the layout of the motherboard is somewhat different, so a photo of each is helpful here. Figure 5.5 shows a close-up of the LPC on an Xbox revision 1.3 motherboard, which should look the same on 1.2 and 1.4.

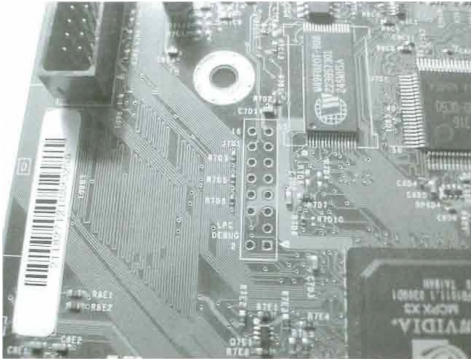


FIGURE 5\*5 The LPC port on an Xbox 1.3.

### Fixing a Pre Soldered LPC

If you are unlucky enough to have a pre-soldered LPC (as you saw in Figure 5.4), you'll need to remove the tin from the LPC to open the holes to allow a pin header (solderless or not) to be installed for a mod chip.

If you find that you will have to take this step, I strongly recommend removing the entire motherboard from the Xbox case; setting it on an antistatic mat; and working on the LPC without the Xbox case, cables, and accessories getting in the way. It is much easier to work when you

### CAUTION

When you reinstall the motherboard, be sure to replace all 1 1 screws (or just 1 0 screws on a 1.6), because the screws keep the motherboard from rubbing against the pegs that could scrape leads off the motherboard if the Xbox is moved around a lot without a fully mounted motherboard.

can get up close to the LPC with your soldering iron. And, if you read Chapter 2, you know that it's not difficult to remove the motherboard, and there's no harm in doing so. You can easily screw it back in after you are done installing the mod chip.

Here is a quick explanation of how to clear the LPC points from pre-solder. You will need a firm, small wire, such as wire braid or a pin from a mod chip pin header. You will need a soldering iron to heat up the pin, so you will need to buy a soldering iron even if you want to install a solderless adapter. Sorry, but it's just one of the exceptions for owners of early Xbox revisions (at least, those with a pre-soldered LPC) that cannot be avoided. Hold the small wire/pin with needle-nose pliers and heat the top of the wire with your soldering iron while touching each point on the LPC that must be opened.

At this point, take care because not every point needs to be opened! Points 4 and 6 are not needed. Look at Figure 5.6 for an illustration of which LPC holes you should open.

Figure 5.7 shows the solderless pin header for your reference. Note that the pin header image is inverted from the image of the LPC. To compensate, visualize the pin header (in Figure 5.7) tilting down toward you until the pins are facing down, and that is the orientation of the pin header onto the LPC.

Using the heated wire/pin, touch each of the LPC points that you need to open, and the solder should melt and attach to the wire/pin. I recommend that you do not use a suction desolderer because that may damage the leads on the motherboard. Take your time and be precise and meticulous in your work, and try not to be in a hurry.

C7D

K1I



FIGURE 5\*6 The LPC points with labels.

## Locating the DO

The "DO" (dee-zero) is a point on the motherboard near the LPC that must be connected to the mod chip to provide a complete interface to the Xbox system bus. There are basically two

89

different positions for the DO based on the Xbox revision.

## DO Point on 1.0-1.1 Motherboard

The early Xbox revisions (1.0 and 1.1) have the DO point shown in Figure 5.8. If you are indeed installing a Xenium, you may want to use the DO wire included in the Xenium kit and solder it to the DO point on the motherboard, especially if you can't make the springpin stay in position. That is why the DO wire was included with the Xenium kit. I have found that I am able to keep the DO spring-pin (attached to the solderless adapter) on the DO point by carefully pushing it into the DO hole and then gently positioning the solderless adapter

leads onto the LPC and screwing it down. As far as I know, the DO point is at the same location for both 1.0 and 1.1.



FIGURE 5\*7 The solderless header showing the pins.

## DO/LFRAME Point on 1.2-1.6 Motherboard

The DO point (called LFRAME on 1.6) is in a different location on more recent Xbox revisions (1.2 to 1.6), as shown in Figure 5.9. As far as I know, the DO is the same for revisions 1.2 to 1.4, but you should just scrutinize your motherboard carefully because some cases may have unusual differences (as has already been noted).

### Installing the Solderless Adapter

If you have cleared out the pre-soldered LPC points or if you have an Xbox that already had open LPC points (which is the most common case), you are ready to install the solderless adapter, which is what I'll go over next. First, let's get our bearings. Take the solderless adapter in your hand and examine it (see Figure 5.10). Take note of how the DO wire points down and the pins below are springy. This is the orientation (with pins facing down) of the adapter as it will be placed on the motherboard.

### 90 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip

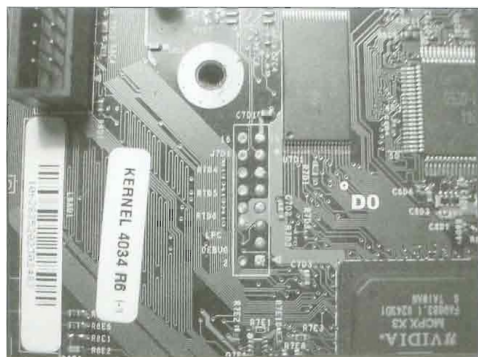


FIGURE 5,8 The LPC port on an Xbox 1.0-1.1.

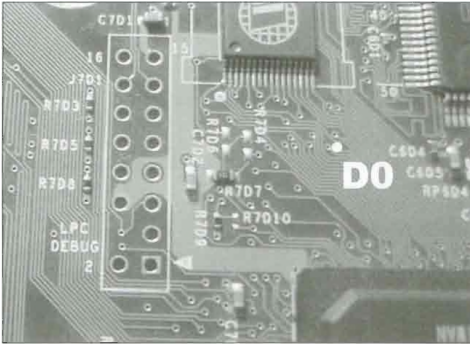


FIGURE 5.9 The LPC port on an Xbox 1.2-1.6.

Figure 5.11 shows the solderless adapter next to the LPC in the correct spot. Note the position of the adapter's screw hole near the motherboard screw hole. There is really only one way that the

adapter can be affixed to the motherboard, so I don't expect any confusion on the matter. The DO wire must point down, and the springy leads on the bottom of the solderless adapter are meant for the LPC points.

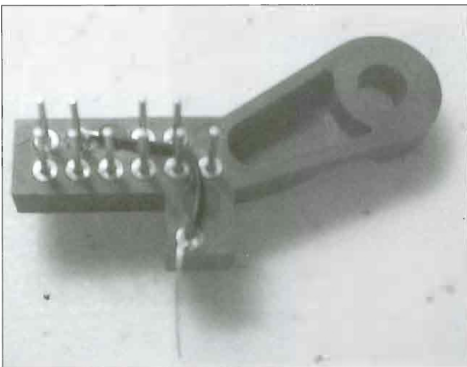


FIGURE 5.10 The solderless header is installed over the LPC port.

Now you will need to determine where the DO point is located, based on the information presented in the preceding section. I am basing this install on a 1.3 motherboard, which should look similar to any other motherboard in the 1.2-1.6 revision group. If you have

a 1.0, 1.1, or some asyet-unknown new revision, just be sure you check with the mod chip manufacturer for information on installing the mod chip, including how to locate the DO point. In any event, it is always located near the LPC.

After you have positively located the DO point on your motherboard, you should then gently insert the DO spring-wire on the solderless adapter into the DO hole (see Figure 5.12).

After you have the DO pin positioned, you can gently position the solderless adapter over the LPC points while keeping the DO pin still inserted into the DO point on the motherboard, as shown in Figure 5.13. If you are careful, you should

### CAUTION

I can't stress enough how careful you must be to avoid breaking the DO pin. The DO is as critical as any pin on the header, and the adapter is useless if the DO breaks off.

92

## CHAPTER 5 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip

be able to screw the solderless adapter onto the motherboard using the provided screw—which is the same as a regular Xbox motherboard screw, except that it is slightly longer to account for the centimeter or so height of the solderless adapter.

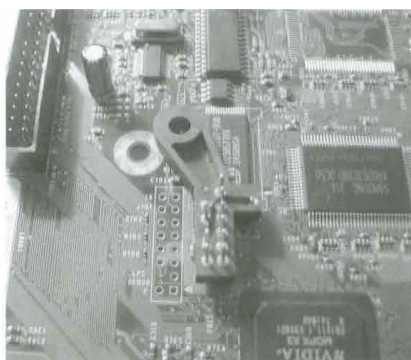
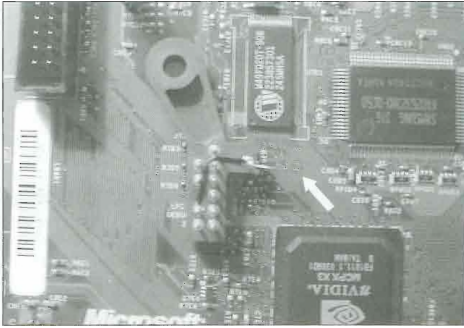




FIGURE S.I 1 Positioning the solderless adapter near the LPC.



HIP1& f TfJCIIA\*

FIGURE 5\*12 Seating the DO pin into the DO point on the motherboard.



FIGURE S.T3 The solderless adapter has been screwed down to the motherboard.

Figure 5.14 shows a close-up view of the solderless adapter after it has been successfully installed. For your reference, I have also provided you with Figure 5.15 to show the entire Xbox with the solderless adapter in position.

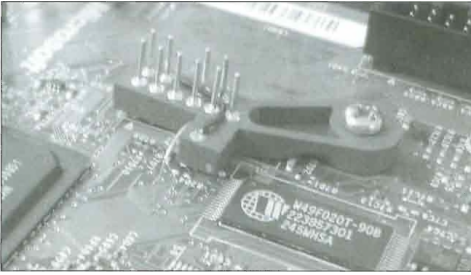
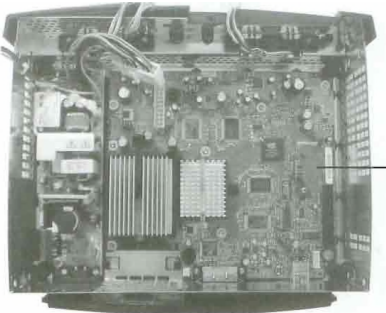


FIGURE 5,14 Close-up view of the installed solderless adapter.

## 94 Installing a Solderless Mod Chip



Solderless adapter

FIGURE 5.15 Bird's-eye view of the solderless adapter.

## Installing the Mod Chip

Now that the solderless adapter is installed, attaching the mod chip itself to the "new" pin header on the solderless adapter is a simple matter. The mod chip is attached to the solderless adapter using the pin header on the mod chip. It should be affixed to the adapter in only one direction, as shown in Figure 5.16.

The mod chip fits nicely over the adapter, leaving plenty of room for the DVD-ROM drive that is fit snugly over the motherboard on that side of the Xbox. Figure 5.17 shows the final result.

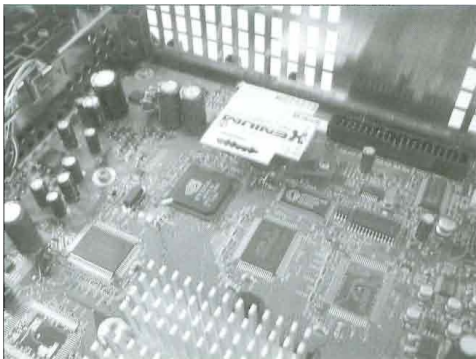


FIGURE 5,16 Attaching the mod chip to the solderless adapter.



FIGURE 5.17 The mod chip has been successfully installed.

96

### Ct Installing a Solderless Mod Chip

#### Booting Up the Mod Chip

Before you eagerly reassemble your Xbox, make sure the mod chip is working properly by booting up your Xbox with the components still removed (yes, you can power it up with the hard drive and DVD-ROM drive removed). If your Xbox displays output that looks like Figure 5.18, don't worry; that's a problem with the high

definition video kit. You will need to use the standard video cable that comes with the Xbox rather than an enhanced video cable because the mod chip doesn't like HDTV (at least on first boot up!).

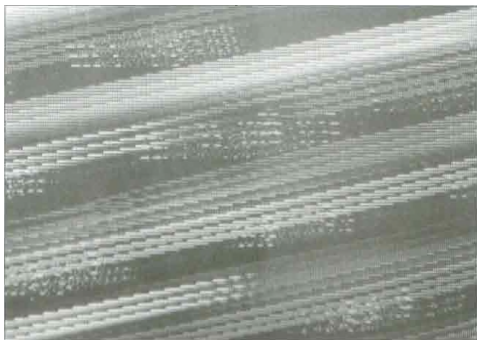


FIGURE 5.18 The mod chip doesn't like HDTV at first boot.

If you have the standard video cable installed, you can power up your Xbox. If all goes well, you should be rewarded with a screen that looks like Figure 5.19.

If you don't get any video, there is probably a problem with the installation of your mod chip, and you will probably notice red flashing on the eject button LED to indicate a problem. If you do have a problem, my first suggestion is to remove the mod chip from the adapter and then try to boot up again. If your Xbox fails to boot with just the solderless adapter (and no mod chip), you have crossed a wire, you have mounted it incorrectly, or there is a problem with the DO/LFRAME connection. Carefully review your installation of the solderless adapter and start over if necessary. If you have carefully seated the adapter, the Xbox should boot up normally with the mod chip not installed. That is a good sign that the solderless adapter is good to go, and you should be able to plug in the mod chip.

## Summary



FIGURE 5.19 The mod chip is working!

## Summary

This chapter explained how to install a mod chip into an Xbox using a standard solderless adapter. I focused on the Xenium mod chip because installation for this chip is very easy, it supports a solderless adapter, and it is a good chip for beginners. If you have a different mod chip, chances are that the installation procedures discussed in this chapter will be the same, or at least similar.

## Installing

### a Soldered

### Mod Chip

This chapter explains how to install a mod chip into your Xbox by soldering a pin header to the Xbox motherboard. The pin header allows you to remove the mod chip any time you want, and even switch to another Xbox if necessary without buying a new mod chip. A pin header also makes it possible to remove a mod chip for a BIOS flash update, to replace a damaged mod chip, or even use a different mod chip if a newer model comes out. If you are using a mod chip other than Xenium, refer to the installation manual that came with your mod chip (or refer to the manufacturer's website for documentation). Installation for any mod chip should be similar to the instructions in this chapter.

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

» Removing the motherboard

■ installing a pin header

■ Installing the DO wire

■ Xbox revision L6

■ Rebuilding the LPC

m Installing the LFRAME wire

m Troubleshooting

Removing the Motherboard

You absolutely must remove the Xbox motherboard to solder in a pin header, but don't worry, because removing the motherboard is even easier than opening the case and removing the drives. There are 11 Torx screws holding down the motherboard prior to 1.6, and 10 screws holding down a 1.6 motherboard. If you skipped over Chapter 2,

100

## CHAPTER 6 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

"Disassembling Your Xbox," you may want to refer back to that chapter for instructions on how to take apart your Xbox. When you have your Xbox down to the case and motherboard, you can refer to Figure 6.1 for an illustration showing the 11 screws that must be removed on pre-1.6 motherboards. The 10 screws in 1.6 motherboards are located in similar locations, so you will have no problem finding them all.

### NOTE

If this is the first time you are attempting to install a soldered mod chip, I recommend you read these instructions through completely at least once before attempting to start the install

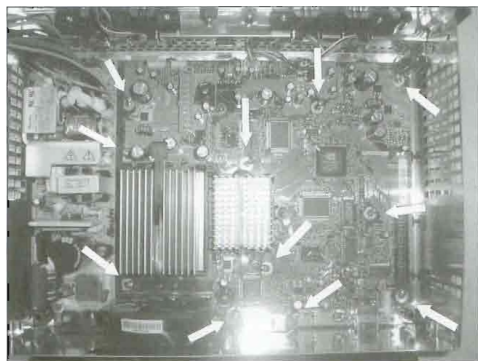


FIGURE 6.1 Eleven screws hold down the pre-1.6 motherboard.

Figure 6.2 shows the top of a 1.3 motherboard, and Figure 6.3 shows the bottom of the same. Note the position of the various chips and locate the LPC. The LPC is located where you might have installed a solderless adapter and is the same place where a pin header will be installed (via soldering) in this chapter.

#### NOTE

If you own a revision 1.5 Xbox, refer to the install manual for the specific changes to the LPC required for 1.5, which may be found in your mod chip installation manual. Revision 1.5 is quite rare. Because I do not have access to a 1.5 and am not basing my work on any online tutorials, I will have to forgo coverage of 1.5. I apologize for the inconvenience if you do indeed own a 1.5, and I encourage you to look up the specific diagrams from your mod chip maker's website.

## Removing the Motherboard

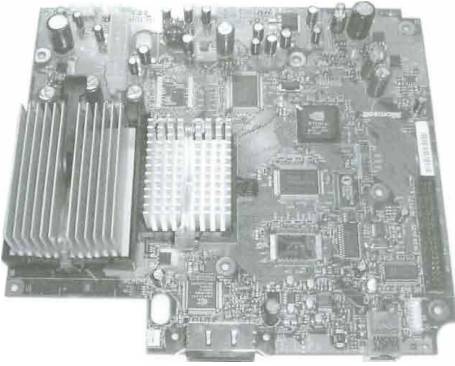


FIGURE 6.2 Top of the Xbox motherboard (revision 1.3 shown).

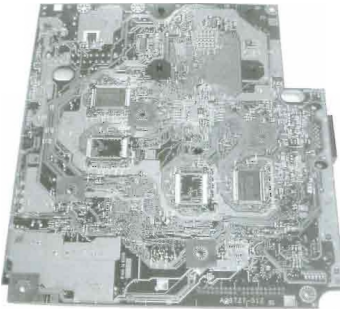


FIGURE 6.3 Bottom of the Xbox motherboard (revision 1.3 shown).

The next few figures show the 1.6 motherboard for your reference. The top of the 1.6 shown in Figure 6.4 and the bottom shown in Figure 6.5 give you an overall picture of the components on the board. Because this motherboard was redesigned, it is laid out quite differently than pre-1.6 boards. In case you haven't noticed, the 1.6 is also smaller than previous boards! You will notice

## CHAPTER 6 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

immediately when you remove the board from the Xbox case, as it comes out easily (whereas pre-1.6 boards are a little tighter fit).



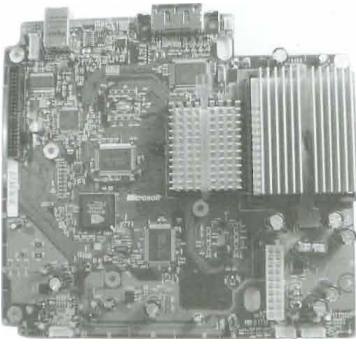
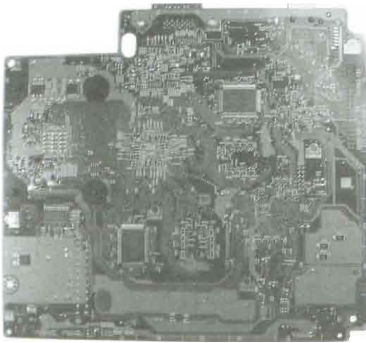


FIGURE 6.4 Top of the Xbox motherboard (revision 1.6 shown).



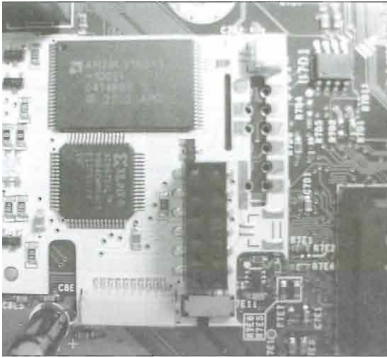
Bottom of the Xbox motherboard (revision 1.6 shown)

103

### Installing a Pin Header (All Revisions)

This section is applicable to all Xbox revisions because the pin header is soldered in the same way in all cases.

You can solder a mod chip to the Xbox motherboard in two ways: by either soldering a pin header to the LPC or by using the quicksolder method. The quicksolder method doesn't make much sense because it is permanent, whereas the pin header method allows you to swap the mod chip or just remove it entirely. Look at Figure 6.6, which shows a Xenium in position for soldering via the quicksolder method.



FJGI

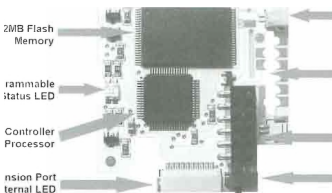
Xenium chip in place for a "quicksolder.'

Although an experienced solderer will have no trouble correcting mistakes, an amateur with the soldering iron will want to avoid this method because it is "permanent" (inasmuch as it cannot be easily removed, as is the case with a pin header). Refer to Figure 6.7 and note the location of the quicksolder points on the Xenium. When you're soldering the Xenium directly to the motherboard with this technique, note that the mod chip is placed flat on the motherboard with the pin header facing upward (it is not needed when you quicksolder the points).

If you want to permanently solder a mod chip to your Xbox motherboard using the quicksolder method, you will need to refer to the install manual that came with your mod chip (and usually available from the manufacturer's website).

104

## Installing a Soldered Mod Chip



Programmable Status LED

Removable DO Wire Port

Quick Solder Wire Install

Pin Header

Emergency Restore Switch

Expansion Port For External LED

FIGURE 6-7 Note the location of the quicksolder points on the Xenium.

Preparing to Solder

If you are like most Xbox fans, you may have little or no skill with a soldering iron. However, there are just as many Xbox fans, hobbyists, and modders who have done a lot of tinkering with electronics and already have some good experience with a soldering iron. I am not concerned with your level of skill at this point because you will see in this chapter just how incredibly easy it is to solder a pin header to your Xbox motherboard. If you own a newer Xbox 1.6, you will find the information in this chapter to install a mod chip on that revision as well. Figure 6.8 shows the pin header and solderless adapter side by side for comparison.



FIGURE 6.8 A pin header and a solderless adapter.

If you are an inexperienced solderer, I can't think of any good reason why you would not use a solderless adapter, unless you own a 1.5 or 1.6—that is the only bulletproof argument for

soldering (because there is no other option!). If you are worried about the DO (dee-zero) pin attached to the solderless adapter becoming dislodged from the DO point on the motherboard (which is the most common cause of mod chip "failure".), you can just solder in the DO wire that comes with the Xenium (shown in Figure 6.9) and otherwise use the solderless adapter with it.

Older solderless adapters had rigid pins beneath that are meant to make contact with the LPC points. These pins should be springy and should move in and out easily. If you have an older solderless adapter with rigid pins underneath, I recommend you buy a new one because the rigid pins tend to cause system instability and boot failure due to the poor quality of the pin springs.



FIGURE 6.9 The DO wire adapter plugs into the Xenium.

Be very careful and patient, noting that you might not succeed on the first try. You should also weigh the possibility of losing your Xbox due to a poor soldering job. Crossed lines may very well destroy your mod chip and/or your Xbox. If your soldering skill is suspect, and you have an older Xbox, it's a no brainer: Use the solderless adapter. But if you have a 1.6 and you have no other choice, just be extremely careful, patient, and meticulous. You can install the pin header and rebuild the LPC with amateur soldering skill if you are patient and careful about what you are doing. As soon as you become impatient, stand up and walk away for a while because stress and impatience might lead to a damaged Xbox.

Take your time and do a good job. The first time I tried to install a mod chip on a 1.6, it didn't work. I narrowed down the problem to an imperfect LFRAME solder point and was able to fix it by carefully diagnosing the symptoms (see the "Troubleshooting"

section later in this chapter if your 1.6 install doesn't seem to work, for some pointers on how to diagnose the problem).

### Locating the LPC

The pin header (shown in Figure 6.10) is inserted into the LPC pin holes (shown in Figure 6.11).

The LPC is located at the same position on all Xbox revisions; the only difference is that early 1.0 and 1.1 motherboards have LPC points that are filled in (pre-soldered), and 1.6 motherboards have a hole for pin 4 (which should not be used).

### 106 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip



FIGURE 6.10 The pin header is soldered to the LPC.

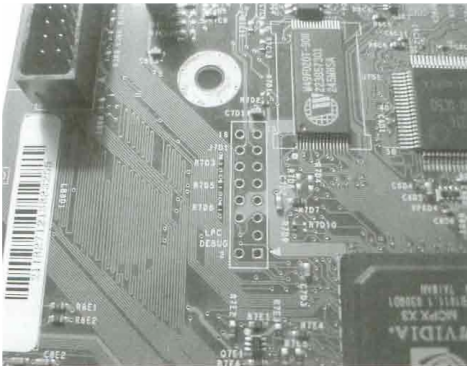


FIGURE 6.11 The LPC is located near the Nvidia MCPX processor.

## Removing Pin 4

You first need to remove pin 4 from the pin header. On earlier Xbox revisions, point 4 on the LPC is blocked, so it's obvious, but on 1.6, point 4 is open. You absolutely must not use pin 4 because your mod chip and/or Xbox can become damaged.

Pin 4 is shown in Figure 6.12. Note that pins on the LPC start at the top right (pin 1), down to pin 2, up and left to pin 3, and down again to pin 4 (see Figure 6.13).

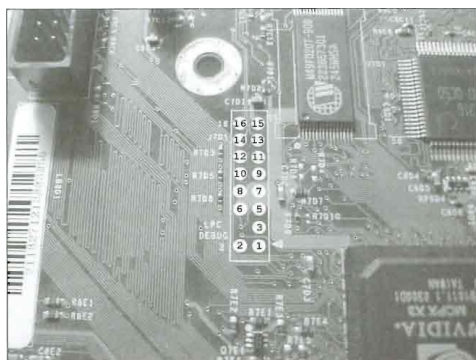


FIGURE 6«J2 The LPC has 16 points; only the first 12 are used.

Pin 4 is shown in the jaws of my needle-nose pliers in Figure 6.13.

Take the pin in your pliers, as shown in Figures 6.14 and 6.15, and pull it straight out. Figure 6.16 shows the final result. Make sure you remove the correct pin; otherwise, you might end up needing a new pin header!

## Inserting the Pin Header

Next, take the pin header and insert it into the LPC holes. Be very careful of the orientation! Point 1 on the LPC is nearest the back of the Xbox, while point 16 is nearest the front of the Xbox. The pin header is placed into the first 12 LPC holes. Because the pin header must be soldered from the bottom side of the Xbox, you can use

tape to hold in the pin header while you work on the other side (see Figure 6.17). While the figure shows clear tape (for illustrative purposes), I strongly recommend you use electrical "black" tape instead. If you can manage it, it is even advisable to use no tape at all, as it is possible to pull up motherboard traces when you remove the tape.

108

### Installing a Soldered Mod Chip



FIGURE 6.13 Locating pin 4 on the pin header (for removal).



FIGURE 6.14 Grasping pin 4 with needle-nose pliers.

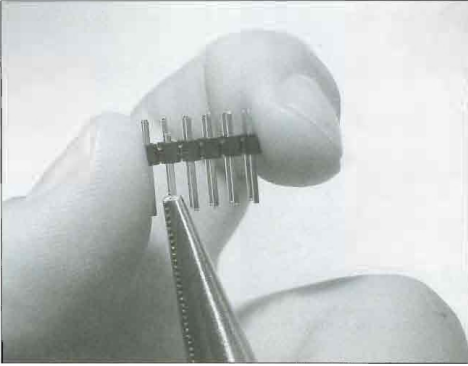


FIGURE 6,1 5 Removing pin 4 (note that the pin header is upside down).

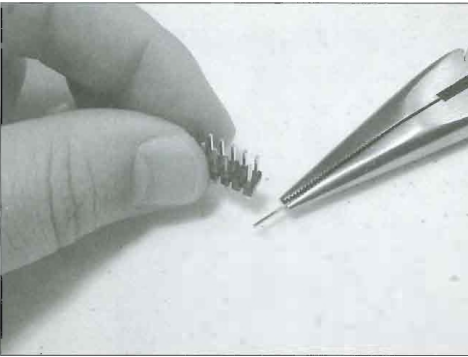


FIGURE 6.16 Make sure you remove the correct pin.

## 10 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

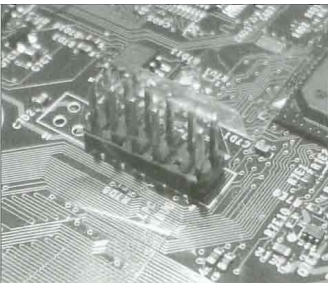


FIGURE 6,1 / Use tape to hold the pin header in place while



you solder it in on the bottom of the motherboard.

## Soldering the Pins

Turn over the motherboard and locate the LPC underneath (shown in Figure 6.1c

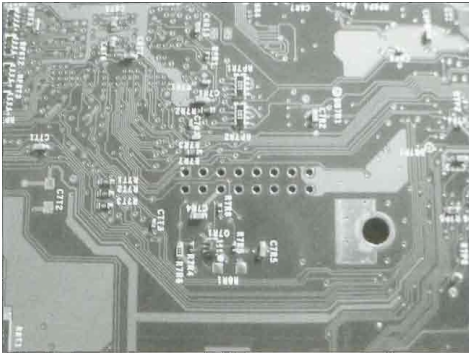


FIGURE 6\*1 8 The LPC on the opposite side of the motherboard.

## Installing a Pin Header (All Revisions)

n

Heat up your soldering iron and wait for it to warm up completely. Be very careful with the tip of the soldering iron! If this is your first experiment with soldering, I strongly recommend that you practice with a broken circuit board first before you make an attempt on a working Xbox motherboard; otherwise, you may end up with a "practice board" right there and will need a new Xbox motherboard entirely! You might use old worthless ISA or PCI cards, or even cheap electronic toys to gain some experience with your soldering iron.

If you do not yet own a soldering iron, I recommend you get a holder and soldering tools along with the iron. These tools are inexpensive; I purchased the tools shown in Figure 6.19 from Fry's Electronics for about \$25. You can find similar tools at Radio Shack, Ace Hardware, and other stores. Even Wal-Mart carries soldering tools. Don't get suckered into buying a \$40 soldering "gun." Just

choose a small iron that is easy to handle; imagine how it will feel in your hand while working up close with your cherished Xbox motherboard. You want something small, light, easy to use.

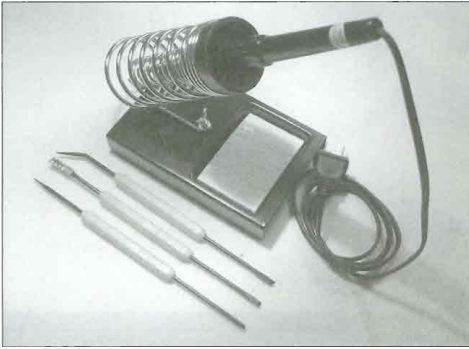


FIGURE 6.19 Buy inexpensive soldering tools.

The soldering iron itself can be any cheap iron as long as it has a removable tip. The iron holder has a tip cleaning sponge that, when wet, provides an excellent way to clean your soldering iron tip. Just wipe the tip clean on the wet sponge after every joint to keep the tip clean and hot. If you use the iron for anything other than soldering (such as melting wire insulation or drawing pictures on a piece of wood!), the tip will become damaged, with "cold spots" that render it unusable. Tips are inexpensive. Just buy a new tip any time you need one instead of trying to work with a bad tool.

## Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

I am convinced that there is no absolutely right way to solder unless you are a trained electronics engineer. A few simple tips are all you need to successfully solder in a pin header (or the 1.6 LPC rebuild wires later in this chapter). A lot of experienced modders will tell you to use rosin flux sparingly when you solder. Well, I use a lot! I love this stuff. If you've ever tried to solder anything without rosin flux, I'm sure you have experienced the trauma of having your solder not cooperate! Rosin flux will help you to get

the solder exactly where you want it. Basically, rosin flux attracts solder. When you have two small wires that are coated with flux, and it is heated, the solder will naturally flow between the touching wires without coaxing. Figure 6.20 shows a bottle of flux purchased from Radio Shack.



FIGURE 6.20 Rosin flux is a necessity when soldering!

Rosin flux is like grease for electronics work and is non-conductive. Although I don't want you to make a mess, you don't have to worry about flux messing up your Xbox. Use the provided brush to dab a little bit of flux on whatever wires or points you need to solder; then apply heat with your iron to each point to melt the flux a little and make it work. Hold the iron to the parts for a few seconds (and no more!); then touch solder to the joint. At this point, soldering becomes as much an art as a science because you don't want to damage the electronics, but you do need to

Apply solder to heated joints, not directly with the soldering iron. The iron is not a paintbrush\* Remember, a joint is the intersection of the two points you are trying to solder together, which will be a motherboard lead and a loose wire end in this case.

## Installing the DO Wire

113

heat up the leads enough to melt the solder. Some experienced

solderers will argue that flux is needed only when using non-rosin solder. So what? I find it is easier to solder when using flux, so I use it. You should do what works best for you, not what others tell you to do, because most people are just searching for personal affirmation (that is, "followers").

After you have finished soldering the pins sticking through the LPC holes on the bottom of the motherboard, the result should look something like Figure 6.21.

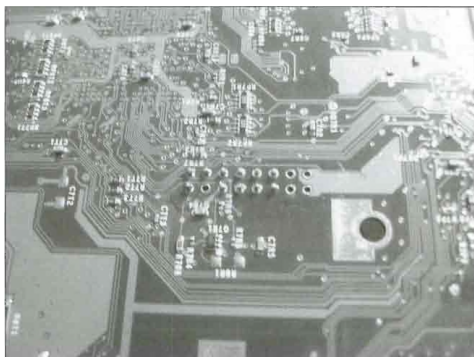


FIGURE G.21 The pin header has been soldered to the motherboard.

### Installing the DO Wire

If you have an Xbox 1.0 through 1.4, all you need to do next is install the DO wire and you're done. If you own a 1.6, skip ahead to the section titled "Xbox Revision 1.6."

The DO wire is located in two different locations on Xbox revision 1.0/1.1 and 1.2-1.4. If you own an Xbox 1.0 or 1.1, refer to Figure 6.22 for the location of the DO.

If you own an Xbox 1.2, 1.3, or 1.4, refer to Figure 6.23 for the DO location.

You will need to solder the blue lead of the DO wire that came with your Xenium chip (with the little adapter that plugs into the DO port on the Xenium). If you don't have one, that's not a problem: Just solder a wire from the DO point to the solder pad on the Xenium labeled "DO" (it's above the "X" in the Xenium logo).

Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

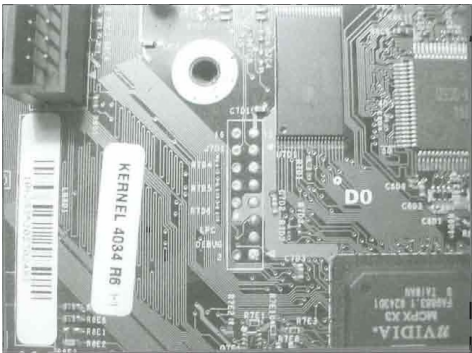


FIGURE 6.22 The DO location on Xbox 1.0 and 1.1 motherboards.

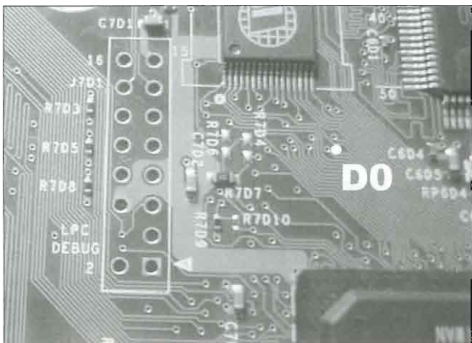


FIGURE 6.2: The DO location on Xbox 1.2-1.4 motherboards

If you do have a Xenium DO wire adapter, you will also need to solder the black lead to a ground, which can be the nearest motherboard screw pad on either the top or bottom of the

motherboard. If you solder to the bottom, you can run the negative wire through one of the open LPC holes (13-16).

## Xbox Revision 1.6 Mod Chip Installation

Xbox revision 1.6 motherboards have a different layout for the LPC than previous revisions, and the DO is no more, replaced with a new point called LFRAME. Figure 6.24 shows the LPC on a 1.6 motherboard. Although it looks the same, the LPC no longer has a 5-volt pin. In addition, the 3.3-volt pin and four of the "LAD" data lines were removed altogether.

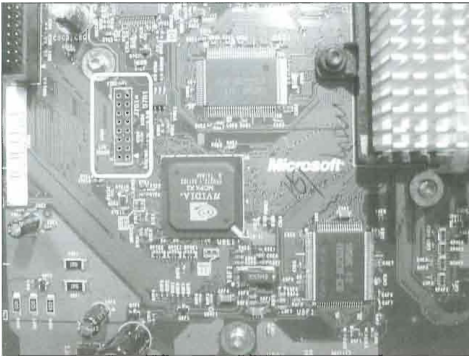


FIGURE 6,24 The LPC on a revision 1.6 motherboard.

### Double-Checking the Revision

Before you start, are you absolutely sure you have a 1.6 Xbox? Aside from going through aJJ the version-checking techniques discussed in Chapter 3, "Identifying Your Xbox Revision," you can easily spot a 1.6 motherboard because it comes equipped with an Xcalibur video chip (shown in Figure 6.25).

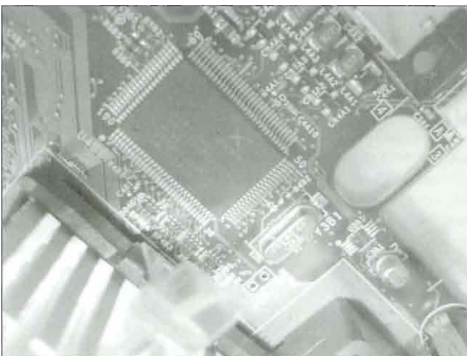


FIGURE 6.25 The Xcalibur video chip is found only on Xbox revision 1.6.

## Installing the Pin Header

The pin header is installed in exactly the same manner on 1.6 as it is for previous revisions, so refer to "Installing a Pin Header (All Revisions)" earlier in this chapter if you skipped over that section and follow the directions to install your pin header. When you're done, it's time to rebuild the LPC.

## Rebuilding the LPC

Why does the LPC need to be rebuilt? The 1.6 motherboard is significantly different from all previous revisions, and that includes the LPC. The mod chips are designed to work with any revision, so it wouldn't make sense to custom-build a "1.6-only" mod chip. Instead, we solder in the pin header as usual and then solder connection wires to make the 1.6 LPC resemble the LPC on an earlier Xbox revision. Ready to start?

Figure 6.26 shows the points that you can refer to when soldering the five wires onto the motherboard (remember that the points are inverted because you are now looking at the bottom of the motherboard). Also, note the orientation of the motherboard in this chapter, where pin 1 is on the right side in these figures, and make sure you orient your motherboard in the same manner. Refer to Table 6.1 for wiring connections.

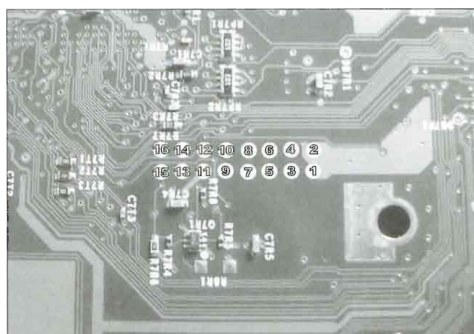


FIGURE 6\*26 Rebuilding the LPC on a 1.6 requires five wires.

TABLE 6,1 LPC Rebuild Wiring Connections for Xbox 1.6

Wire

LPC PIN

To Point

Wire 6 point near R7P4

Wire 7 point near C7R2

Wire 8

Wire 10 point above Pin 1 0

Wire 9 point near R7T3

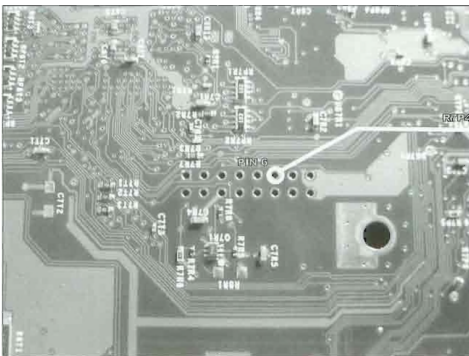
Wire 1

The first wire is soldered between pin 8 and the point labeled R7P4, as shown in Figures 6.27 and 6.28.

Wire 2

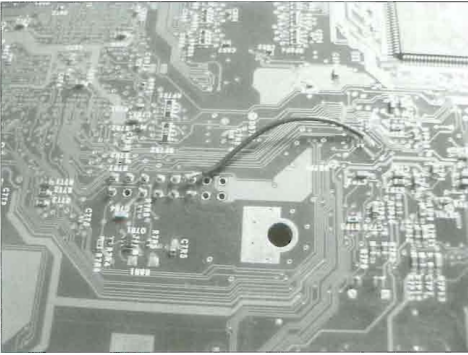
The second wire is soldered between pin 7 and the point near label C7R2, as shown in Figures 6.29 and 6.30.

## CHAPTER 6 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip



The first connection: pin 6 to R7P4.





The first wire has been soldered in place.

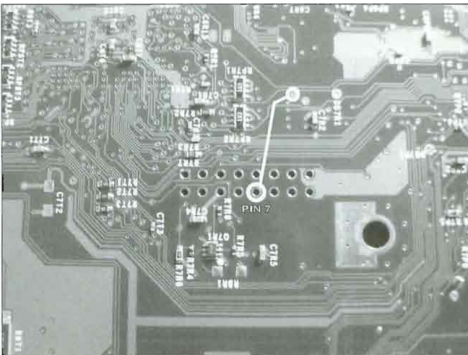


FIGURE 6.29 The second connection: pin 7 to open point near C7R2.

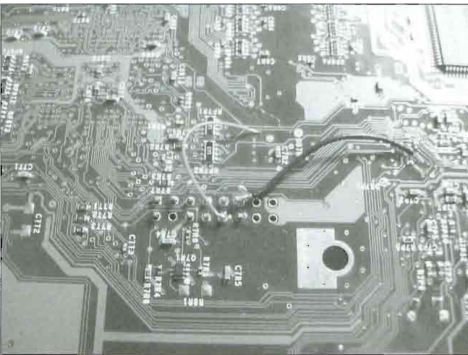
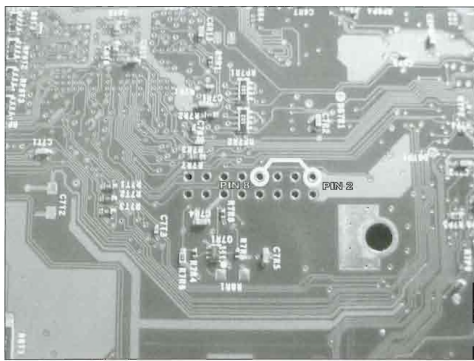


FIGURE 6.30 The second wire has been soldered in place.

The third wire is soldered between pins 2 and 8 on the LPC, as shown in Figures 6.31 and 6.32.



**FIGURE 6.31** The third connection: pin 2 to pin 8.

### The third connection: pin 2 to pin

 $\text{Fe}^{2+}\text{Sn}^{2+}\text{Bi}^{3+}\text{Li}^{+}\text{Mn}^{2+}$  $tS_{,s} \text{ fg}$ 
$$\text{Jr}^{\sim\sim\sim}\text{i}$$

**i**

!

WW

<sup>8</sup>
$$N_{\text{FL}}^* \leq r_j$$

!

\*    ■    \*

^

The third wire has been soldered in place.

The fourth wire is soldered between pin 10 and the open point



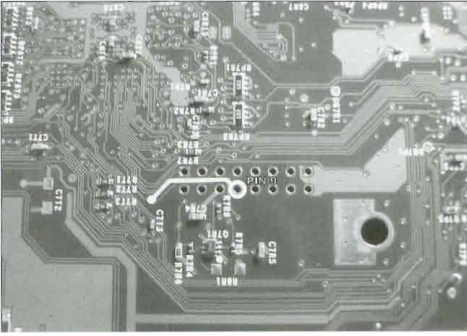


FIGURE 635 The fifth connection: pin 9 to open point near R7T3.

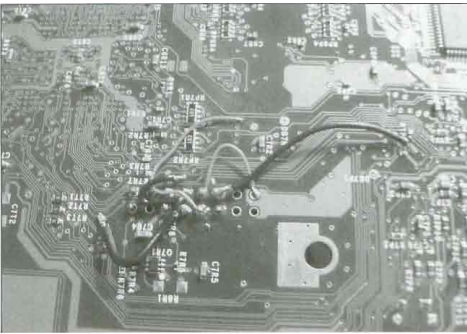


FIGURE 6,,36 The fifth wire has been soldered in place.

## Xbox Revision 1.6 Mod Chip Installation

123

### Installing the LFRAME Wire

Xbox revision 1.6 has no DO point. Instead, it simply uses a different point called LFRAME that seems to fulfill the same purpose as the DO. While the DO is a type of ground that causes the Xbox to boot from the LPC (instead of the built-in BIOS), the LFRAME is a standard signal of the Intel bus protocol. The LFRAME point on the 1.6 is located close to the Xyclops chip at a point called U7C1 (see Figure 6.37).

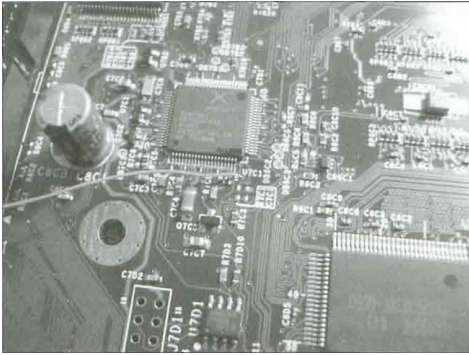


FIGURE 6.37 The LFRAME point is located near U7C1.

Figure 6.38 shows a closer view of the LFRAME point. It is just below the "U" in the U7C1 label on the motherboard near the bottom-right corner of the Xyclops chip.

After you have soldered the blue wire to the U7C1 point, solder the black wire to a ground point, such as the one shown in Figure 6.39. Note that you do not absolutely need to use the DO adapter provided with the Xenium (because it does require the ground); you can solder a single wire from the LFRAME point to the DO solder pad on the Xenium and then not need the ground wire, but the small DO/LFRAME plug is helpful when you need to completely remove the Xenium. (Your mod chip of choice will have similar solder points but may not be exactly the same as the Xenium.)

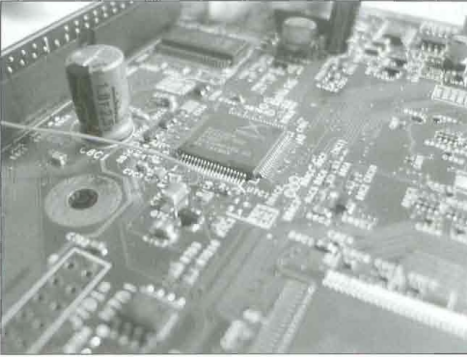
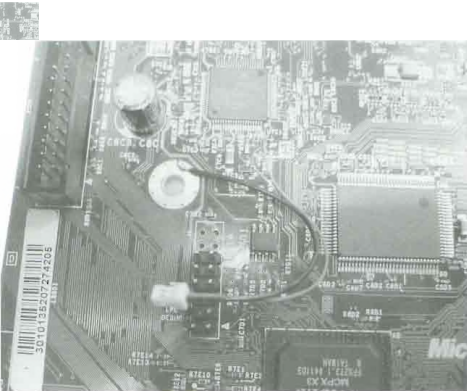


FIGURE 6.38 The LFRAME point is located near U7C1

•t mm



The DO adapter has been soldered to the LFRAME and ground, ready to be plugged into the Xenium.

## Troubleshooting 12 5

### Troubleshooting

Even the most skilled solderer may have problems getting an Xbox to boot after a mod chip has been installed because all it takes is one LPC lead or a faulty DO connection to render the Xbox unbootable. The following sections provide some pointers that may help to at least narrow down the possible problems you might have.

## Problem with the DO/LFRAME

The most common problem is a DO connection (or LFRAME on the 1.6), in which case the mod chip will appear to be powered, but the Xbox will just boot up normally. What happens in this case is that the DO/LFRAME causes the Xbox to boot off the LPC, and when it's not jumpered, the Xbox ignores the LPC (and the mod chip is powered up, but useless).

If your Xbox boots up with the Microsoft Dash after installing your mod chip, check the DO/LFRAME, as you have at least soldered the 3.3v power line to the pin header correctly, but may still have other pins incorrectly soldered. The problem with no response is with the DO/LFRAME point. Double-check the position on the motherboard where you soldered it; make sure no lines are crossed. If you used the Xenium DO wire, make sure you soldered the blue wire to the DO/LFRAME, and the black wire to ground—this can be any nearby motherboard screw-down point.

## Problem with the LPC

Whether or not your mod chip LED lights up, if the Xbox "FRAGS" (a condition in which the front power light blinks red and green), the problem is one or more faulty pin header wires soldered to the LPC. On earlier Xboxes, you likely have pin header leads that are not soldered properly, and 1.6 owners may have incorrect "LPC rebuild" solder points that are faulty. Double-check all of your solder points, making sure that they are solid, with clean, bright solder making a good connection. If your solder is gray in color or not smooth looking, the connections might be experiencing resistance, which the fine tolerances of the Xbox electronics might sense as a fault.

## Other Problems

If you believe your soldering work is good but the mod chip still doesn't work (no LED at all), your only recourse is to remove the pin header and start over from scratch because it is very possible that you have crossed lines underneath the pin header itself. To remove the solder, I recommend using desolder braid, which works great: Just touch the braid to a solder point, heat it up with your

iron, and the solder will be drawn to the braid. Under no circumstances should you ever touch a point with the iron and then try to pull the pin header loose! That is guaranteed to pull up traces off the motherboard, which is pretty much a DOA situation.

## 126 Installing a Soldered Mod Chip

If all else fails, remove the wires and pin header, reassemble your Xbox, and make sure it boots normally into the Microsoft Dashboard (or boots a game disc). If your Xbox is good, you can start over on the installation. I have found a lot of good information on several online forums, where other Xbox modders post their problems and solutions, and I guarantee you that any problem you run into has already been overcome by someone else. So, give the forums a try:

■ <http://www.teamxodus.com>

■ <http://www.xbox-scene.com>

If you are using a mod chip other than the Xenium, you'll want to refer to the installation instructions for that model anyway, so it's a good idea to browse the forums for assistance. Most of the mod chips have a similar installation routine.

## Summary

This chapter was technically challenging, covering the difficult subject of soldering a pin header to the motherboard and the even more difficult subject of rebuilding the LPC on an Xbox 1.6 motherboard. But persistence pays off, and with a little patience, you will have yourself a solid, permanent, reliable pin header for your mod chip.

## PART III

### Software Mods



## The Xenium Operating System

This chapter provides an overview of the Xenium operating system that is built into the Xenium mod chip. You will learn the basics of using the Xenium operating system in this chapter, assuming you have already installed a mod chip after reading one of the preceding two chapters.

### Overview of the Xenium O/S

The first thing you should know about the Xenium O/S is that it is not based on any copyrighted or proprietary software, nor is it derived from any Microsoft code. The Xenium O/S was completely written from scratch by Team Xodus and is not based on any prior code base. Many mod chips use the Cromwell bootloader, an open source Xbox boot program (using some Linux code) that was customized just for the Xbox architecture, or use a derivative of the Microsoft core. Cromwell is not a full Xbox operating system. By "architecture" I mean that this software was written to run specifically on the Xbox, featuring an Intel processor, Nvidia graphics, and Nvidia media processor. The hardware in the Xbox is normally controlled by a custom version of Windows 2000—a stripped-down core with integrated drivers for these hardware components.

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- Overview of the Xenium O/S

- Editing the Launch

- Using the disk tools

- Using the EEPROM tools

- Changing the Xenium settings

Rebooting your Xbox

Performing emergency system recovery

Shutting off the Xbox

130

## CHAPTER 7 The Xenium Operating System

A mod chip must provide its own Xbox core because the Windows 2000 core is no longer available when bypassed by the mod chip. In fact, the mod chip bypasses the Microsoft BIOS completely by using its own, so when you install a mod chip, your Xbox may not use the original BIOS (based on Windows 2000) at all! (However, most mod chips are able to "boot" the original Xbox TSOP BIOS.) This is the place where the Cromwell Linux BIOS is used—in the mod chip itself. (Isn't it ironic that modders use a competing operating system to modify their Xboxes?) Many PC users assume that "Windows 2000 core" refers to the software installed on the Xbox hard drive. This is just not the case, which comes as a surprise to many. The Xbox O/S is stored in a flashable EEPROM chip.

Remember in Chapter 3, "Identifying Your Xbox Revision," when you learned how to identify the revision of your Xbox? The kernel ("K:") version is sort of like a software version for the "Windows 2000 core" that is so often discussed in the Xbox community.

To better understand the way the Xbox user interface works, it helps to differentiate the BIOS from the Dashboard. When you power up your Xbox without a disc in the drive, what you see on the TV screen is not the operating system! It's just the Dashboard, which is sort of like an Automated Teller Machine (ATM): It lets you do a few minor things, and nothing else.

### The Xenium O/S Main Menu

The Xenium O/S main menu is shown in Figure 7.1. If this is the first time you have fired up the Xbox after installing a mod chip, you'll want to first add the Xbox TSOP BIOS to the Xenium Launch

menu. That way, you'll be able to load the Microsoft Dashboard from the Xenium menu.



The Xenium O/S main menu.

## Launch

Highlight the first item called Launch Menu in the Xenium O/S main menu. Selecting that item will bring up the Launch menu. If this is indeed the first time you have used the mod chip, you will see a single item in the Launch menu, Add A New Item, as shown in Figure 7.2.



FIGURE

The Launch menu as it appears at first run.

Selecting the single menu item will bring up a diSog box asking "LtWhere would you like this item to launch from?" (see Figure 7.3) with the first item highlighted (TSOP). TbOP stands for Thin Small Outline Package, which describes the type of chip used for the Xbox BIOS,

Select TSOP from the three choices because you want to add a launch item for the standard Xbox BIOS (and Dashboard). Next, you will be asked to enter a name for the new launch item with a controller-based input screen, as shown in Figure 7.4.

Xenium O/S should have already filled in the name "Retail Kernel" for you, so you can just use this name or type one of your own. Select Done in the bottom-left corner of the virtual keyboard to continue. The next screen that comes up is the fun part: You get to customize the programmable LED on the Xenium to show a certain color when that particular launch item is launched (see Figure 7.5).

## NOTE

Xbox 1.6 no longer uses a TSOP chip for the BIOS because 1.6 is not flashable! This was done partially to prevent modders from modifying the stock Xbox BIOS because the earliest modders would actually replace the BIOS by exploiting a "load/save game" bug in some games (where some games are capable of running a binary program that is "smuggled in" as a save game file). This is no longer possible with 1.6, which features a new motherboard layout designed to reduce the cost of manufacturing the Xbox and reduce its size.

132

## The Xenium Operating System



FIGURE 7.3 Choosing the type of launch item to create.

Pick o bank name

Retail Kernel Caps 0123456789 Sym a b c d € \ q h i j Del  
klmnopqrst Done u v w x g z Sgoi

FIGURE 7.4 Entering the name of the new launch item.

After you have added this first launch item to the Launch menu, go ahead and launch it to make sure it is working correctly. You should see the familiar Xbox Dashboard come up. Returning to the Launch menu shows more options now (see Figure 7.6). From this new Launch menu,

If you have set a default launch item, you can always bring up the Xenium O/S again by powering down your Xbox and then pressing the eject button rather than the power button. The eject button brings up the Xenium O/S instead of the default launch item (only when you have InstantBoot enabled in the Xenium Settings).

133

you can add, rename, and remove launch items, as well as set a default item (which causes the Xenium O/S to launch the default item automatically when you power on your Xbox).



FIGURE 7.5 Choosing a color for the Xenium's programmable LED.

nuvs



FIGURE 7.6 A new launch item has been added.

You are probably wondering how you can install other launch items to this menu and what types of items can be added, right? Well, for one thing, you can only add a BIOS image to the launch menu. The Xenium O/S actually writes an image into the 2MB memory chip on the Xenium. These images will usually be 256KB, but some images can be 512KB or 1024KB (but these are the

134

## The Xenium Operating System

only three options). A BIOS image will have a .bin extension. You can add any BIOS you want to the Xenium Launch menu, as long as it was written for Xbox. Examples include the Cromwell and EvolutionX M8.

### NOTE

I will explain the process of installing a new BIOS in the next chapter, when I show you how to install and use the EvolutionX Dashboard.

### Disk Tools

The second item on the Xenium O/S main menu is Disk Tools, as shown in Figure 7.7. The disk tools provided by Xenium O/S are perhaps the most important options in the O/S. You can lock or unlock the hard drive (required when making changes to it, but note that Microsoft Dashboard requires that the drive be locked!),

make a complete backup of a hard drive, copy a partition, or format a partition.



FIGURE 7.

The Disk Tools menu item.

Highlight this item and select it to bring up the Disk Tools menu, as shown in Figure 7.8.

### Lock/Unlock Hard Drive

You will want to keep the hard drive locked most of the time and unlock it only when necessary, after which it should be locked again. Why? The Microsoft Dashboard doesn't work at all with an unlocked hard drive. Locking the drive involves the use of a security key that is unique to each drive. You cannot simply plug a new hard drive into your Xbox and use Xenium O/S to format and prepare it for use. The hard drive locking key is actually stored in the Xbox EEPROM! The

135

Xenium O/S is capable of reading the hard drive key and will use it to create a duplicate hard drive image when you choose Drive Upgrade Wizard from the menu.

moxmtt

Drive Upgrade Wizard Copy Partition Format Partition

FIGURE 7.8 The Disk Tools menu allows you to maintain the hard drive.

## Drive Upgrade Wizard

The Drive Upgrade Wizard is a really awesome feature of the Xenium O/S. Using this feature, you can completely replace the old Xbox hard drive with a new one that has much more capacity (see Figure 7.9).

Ensure that your replacement drive is of the same type as the DVD-ROM, on which it is powered and intended to be a \*WVC drive \S^

Hot' i 'l | I took on u.

it sell for dclafe on the [ump < qs],

not yet attached your drive,

please turn off your Xbox# and do so now

Cancel Shutdown

L

FIGURE 7.9 The Drive Upgrade Wizard.

136

## CHAPTER The Xenium Operating System

You can install a new hard drive in your Xbox with 300GB or more storage—and the Xbox will probably handle any size of IDE drive that is likely to come out in the near future. The only restriction is that the drive must be of the ATA-100/133 (IDE) variety; Xbox doesn't support the latest Serial ATA (SATA) drives because it just has an older IDE cable. I suppose you could use some sort of IDE-to-SATA adapter..hmm, that's an interesting idea.



Rather than explain how to upgrade the hard drive at this point, I'll postpone that discussion for a complete chapter on the subject because the hard drive upgrade requires more in-depth explanation than this chapter was meant to get into. Refer to Chapter 12, "Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive" for a complete tutorial on how to install a new hard drive in your Xbox. Wait until you see what a new hard drive makes possible—especially when you're running Xbox Media Center (see Chapter 10, "Xbox Media Center")!

## Copy Partition

The Disk Tools menu in the Xenium O/S (see Figure 7.10) includes a handy feature that will copy one entire partition of a hard drive to another drive: Copy Partition. That is an important point: the procedure doesn't let you just copy one partition to another; it is used to copy a whole partition from one drive to another drive. You may want to do this if you have a drive prepared for your Xbox, but you need to copy over a partition. Just be careful when using this feature because (obviously) the destination partition is completely replaced. This feature doesn't just copy files; it replaces the destination partition entirely. I will discuss this feature again in Chapter 12.

Unlock Hard Drive Drive Upgradc Wizard Copg ParHtti Formall  
Partition

FIGURE 7.10 The Copy Partition option.

Select the Copy Partition menu option to bring up the next screen, shown in Figure 7.11. This screen lets you choose the source partition that you wish to copy.

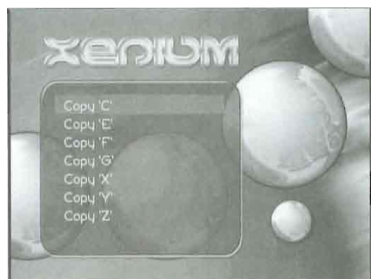


FIGURE 7.1 I Selecting the source partition.

After you select a source partition, you will get a confirmation screen (shown in Figure 7.12) that warns you of the result of the copy operation.

£

Do gou really want ro d This process Is irreversible and will  
overwrk oil fhc dale on thedtfttnoftan Prcs\* wiih

to continue Press 'Cancel1 ro return to fb\* rrn :

Ye\$ Cancel

FIGURE 7.12 The warning confirmation screen verifies that you want to proceed.

If you select Yes, you will then see the screen shown in Figure 7.13, asking whether you would like to format the destination partition before performing the copy operation. You would want to do this, for instance, if the partition doesn't already exist on the second hard drive. The copy process will begin immediately after you choose Yes or No to the format question.

r

i 'C Cof Format dcsHnotlon porht

Cop Yes No

Copg 'V1 CpRl) T

house 7

You can choose whether you want to format the destination partition.

Format Partition

Sometime you may need to format a specific partition on your old

or new hard drive, such as if the partition becomes corrupted due to disk errors (the Xbox doesn't have a disk check feature, after all!) or if you have been using the partition for a long time, copying and deleting files for months or even years, and the files have become fragmented. Xenium O/S has no hard drive defragger, so the best way to overcome a fragmented partition is to make a backup copy of all the files, format it, and then copy the files back. You can copy the files to your PC using FTP or SMB, format the partition, and then copy the files back. I wouldn't think this is at all necessary unless you do a lot of file transfers because the Xbox hard drive is primarily a read-only drive; after you load it up, the Xbox only reads the files (to play music, games, and so on).

To format a partition, first select the Format Partition option from the Disk Tools menu, as shown in Figure 7.14.

Next, you'll be asked for the partition that you wish to format (see Figure 7.15). The Xenium O/S scans the local drive for an existing partition to format, but generally, the Xbox uses only seven partitions: C, E, F, G, X, Y, and Z. The Dashboard uses the first four partitions, where savegames and so on are stored. In particular, partition C is the place where you will install a new Dashboard (covered in the next chapter). Partition E is the main "work partition" of the Xbox, where savegames and music soundtracks are stored. If you install a larger hard drive, you'll see a partition F. Partition G is not as common but is an option if you have a very large hard drive and want it split into two parts. Partitions X, Y, and Z are used for game caches to speed up loading of game levels; a game has the option of copying large portions of content from the disc to one of these cache partitions for better game play.



FIGURE 7.15 Choosing a partition to be formatted.

After you choose the partition, you'll be asked on which hard drive the partition is located. You can format any partition on the primary or secondary drive, thanks to the screen shown in Figure 7.16. If you are confused, this basically means that the Xenium O/S supports two hard drives. You can remove the DVD-ROM drive and replace it with a second hard drive! (More on that in Chapter 12.)

Next, you'll see the confirmation screen shown in Figure 7.17, allowing you to change your mind about the format process. If you wish to proceed, select Yes.

## 140 The Xetillum Operating System

IOIOVt

Which dir 'Master' is your normal hai lave4 Is only if you have put a second hard drwc in place of Ljour DVDRQI Irh

Moster Formal 'Zl

■ .in\* el

FIGURE 7.16 Selecting the hard drive to use (the Xenium O/S supports two!).

Do you really wan I lo loi fnal

This prod\*\*\* is irreversible and wl|) dcslo

ull the data on live partition Press Vet' It

you ore sure you with \o con vess

'Cancel' to return lo the men"

Yc\* Cqim i

FIGURE 7\*17 Final confirmation before the partition is formatted.

## EEprom Tools

Figure 7.18 shows the EEprom Tools item selected on the main menu, which brings up the EEprom Tools menu (shown in Figure 7.19). This handy little screen gives you the basic settings of your Xbox, including the revision range, video standard (NTSC or PAL), DVD region (1 to 6), and game region (US/CAN, JAP, or EUR/AUS). The Xbox version item will tell you only if your

## The Xenium 0/S Main Menu

141

Xbox revision is 1.0, 1,1 to 1.5, or 1.6, without any details about specifically which version it is in the 1.1 to 1.5 range (it's difficult to tell in software).



FIGURE 7.18 The EEprom Tools menu item.

.smoin

Xbox vcrttorr I I Video Standard NTSC DVD Reqlorii Region I Game  
Rcqion- US/CAN Backup r

FIGURE 7,19 The EEprom Tools menu.

You can also change the video standard, DVD region, and game region from this menu. For instance, suppose you live in the United States and have an Xbox 1.3 that you are selling to someone in Europe (without a mod chip). That person will not be able to use the Xbox unless the DVD

142

## 7 The Xenium Operating System

region and game region values are changed. You might open up an Xbox store and sell the same basic Xbox unit internationally! (However, as you saw in the preceding chapter, this wouldn't be very practical for the 1.6 if you had to solder in a mod chip just to change the region settings.)

### Backing Up the Xbox EEprom

The Xenium O/S has a very helpful feature that allows you to make a backup of the Xbox EEprom containing all of the configuration settings of the Xbox. Why would you ever want to do this? Although this feature might not seem very important, it can save your Xbox from being stuck with unusable settings that might have been set from the Microsoft Dashboard. Because the Xenium O/S accesses the Xbox EEprom directly and can make changes to it, you can correct mistakes in the DVD or game region codes. As a precaution, you should make a backup of the EEprom only when you have a stable Xbox that is configured properly because the process is meant to restore a good backup in the event of a system error. Be sure you do not perform a backup immediately after making changes to the Xbox until it has been thoroughly tested.

To perform the backup procedure, highlight the Backup EEprom menu item, shown in Figure 7.20, and then select it. The Xenium

O/S will immediately perform the backup process, as shown in Figure 7.21.

'xssTMam

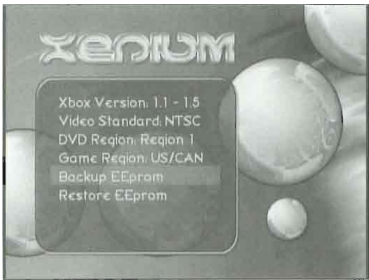


FIGURE 7.20 The Backup EEprom menu item.

If an error occurs with the EEprom backup, Xenium O/S will notify you; otherwise, you should see the message shown in Figure 7.22.

The Xenium O/S Main Menu 143

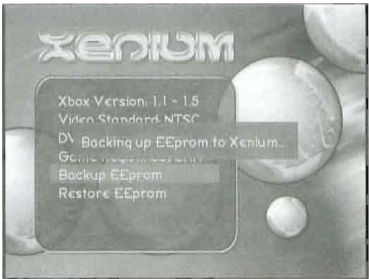


FIGURE 7\*21 Backing up the Xbox EEprom chip.



Xbox Version: I I

^€ EEprom ha

DVD

(xirr < iR

Res tor\*: EEprom

The EEprom backup process was successful.

Restoring the Xbox EEprom

You would want to restore the Xbox EEprom if your Xbox has a configuration problem that you cannot solve from the Microsoft Dashboard (or any other replacement dash). This will restore the EEprom to the configuration state of the Xbox at the time of the last backup. Highlight the Restore EEprom menu item and select it, as shown in Figure 7.23.

144

The Xenium Operating System

Selecting the Restore EEprom choice brings up a dialog box that asks you to verify the Xbox revision (see Figure 7.24). If the revision is correct (in other words, you have not changed the motherboard since the last backup), you can proceed by selecting the button.

If you still want to overwrite the current EEprom with the image stored in the Xenium memory, go ahead and choose Yes; otherwise, choose No, as shown in Figure 7.25.

CAUTION

If you used the Xenium chip on a 1.6 Xbox, for instance, then inserted it into a 1.3 Xbox, and accidentally restored the EEprom, that could render the Xbox unusable. So be careful not to perform a restore unless you are absolutely sure it is the right EEprom memory image, and don't do this frivolously—only when necessary. If the power were to go out during an EEprom restoration, your Xbox BIOS would be ruined (which is repairable if you have a mod chip installed, but problematic nevertheless).



SSSBuB^  
Xbox Version 11-15 i  
Video Standard NTSC  
■DVDRcqiofti F  
Gome Rtqlorii US/CAN  
Bed prom ^^

•  
\_J  
,

FtCUR

The Restore EEprom menu item.

Settings

Figure 7.26 shows the Settings menu item selected on the main menu. Selecting this item will bring up the Settings menu, as shown in Figure 7.27. This menu has five options: Xenium Settings, Network Settings, FTP Settings, Telnet Settings, and SMB Settings.

Your Xbox appears to be version I I II this is incorrect, or if you of  
^m,

pkasc cancel and visit the fopjni hlip//www.o2xaduscorn and ask  
to. assfsro

version rs Ci

COhlm

FIGURE 7\*24 Confirming the Xbox revision before writing to the  
EEprom.

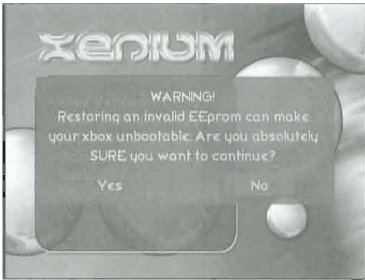


FIGURE 7.25 Final confirmation on the EEPROM write procedure.

### Xenium Settings

First, select the Xenium Settings option to bring up the Xenium Settings menu, shown in Figure 7.28. This menu has a single option for setting Instant Boot either on or off. If you have selected a default item in the Launch menu, this setting will allow that launch item to automatically launch when you power up the Xbox.

### 146 The Xenium Operating System



FIGURE 7.26 The Settings menu item.



FIGURE 7.27 The Settings menu.

## Network Settings

Selecting the Network Settings option brings up the Network Settings menu, as shown in Figure 7.29. This menu lets you change the settings used by Xenium O/S to configure the Xbox LAN connection.

147

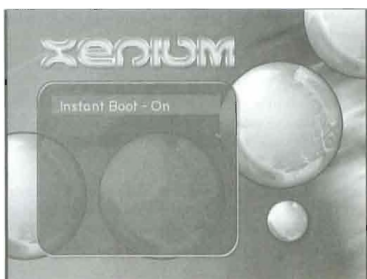


FIGURE 7.28 The Xenium Settings menu.



FIGURE 7.29 The Network Settings menu.

If you have a router with a built-in Dynamic Host Control Protocol, (DHCP) service, you can configure Xenium O/S to use Dynamic IP. I prefer the Static IP option because then the IP address of the Xbox will always be the same, which is convenient when you need to connect to it to transfer files via FTP. However, you may want to connect to your Xbox using SMB, in which case you can just browse the Xbox file system with Windows Explorer (or whatever file

browser you are using with your PC's O/S). I tend to use FTP more often because my Xbox is running EvolutionX

148

## The Xenium Operating System

(which does not have an SMB server, unfortunately), so I usually have a static IP, but browsing the file system is definitely more convenient when using Xenium O/S.

Note also that the network settings used by Xenium O/S need not match the network settings in a Dashboard such as EvolutionX because, unlike a PC O/S, the Xenium O/S doesn't keep on running "in the background" when a Dashboard is running. Xenium O/S is a multi-threaded O/S, but it does not continue running when another program (such as EvolutionX) is run. One nice thing about SMB is that you can just connect to your Xbox using the server share name (such as "xbox") instead of needing to know the IP address.

Any time you want to make a change to the network settings and have it take effect immediately, just use the Restart Network option. This choice will cause Xenium O/S to completely restart all networking services (including the IP stack, network drivers, FTP, and SMB server), just like your PC does when it boots up (see Figure 7.30).

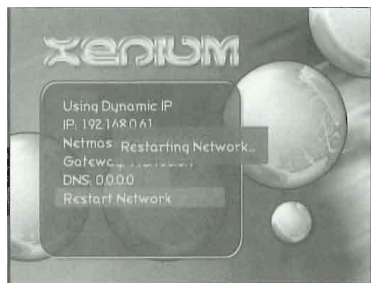


FIGURE 7.30 Restarting the network connection in Xenium O/S.

The other network settings should match the settings of your router or the PC that you are connecting to, including the IP prefix

(192.168.0.x is standard) and subnet mask (255.255.255.0 is standard). The gateway is important if you are using a router with a broadband connection to the Internet, in which case, the gateway should be the IP address of your router. You normally don't need to change the DNS setting unless you are using a shared Internet connection without DHCP.

If you don't have a router, you will have to set up your PC for a direct connection to the Xbox using two network interface cards (NICs). This is a cheesy way to do it, so why not just buy a hub for \$10 or, better yet, a cheap router for \$25? You 1J want to share your Internet connection with

149

#### NOTE

Because this isn't a networking book, I'll just refer you to a primer for more information on setting up a PC LAN. A good primer is *How Networks Work*, 7th Edition, by Frank Derfler Jr. and Les Freed (Sams Publishing, ISBN: 0789732327).

your Xbox anyway, so the cost of a router is money well spent. Of course, if you don't have a broadband Internet connection, I would still recommend a router because it will have DHCP, and configuring it is generally much easier than setting up networking on your PC.

The important thing is to get your PC and Xbox on the same LAN one way or the other: That can be with a router {very easy}, hub (easy), or dual NICs (hard!). If you have no DHCP service, you need to set the IP address of your PC and Xbox manually, using the same prefix. Two good examples include 192.168.0.1 and 192.168.0.2.

#### FTP Settings

From the main Settings menu, choose FTP Settings to bring up the FTP configuration screen, shown in Figure 7.31.

'masom

Ftp

S\*1 Ftp Username

Set FTP Password

i

FIGURE 731 Xenium O/S includes an FTP server.

The only options here allow you to enable/disable the FTP server and set the username and password of the FTP server. If you have enabled the FTP server, it is running already, and you can connect to your Xbox using your favorite FTP client.

For the sake of simplicity, I will just use Internet Explorer to connect to my Xbox to test the FTP server. By all means, you should use your favorite FTP client instead if you wish.

150

## CHAPTER < The Xenium Operating System

If you have SiVIB enabled, you can connect to your Xbox by typing the name specified in the SMB settings (xbox is default); otherwise, you'll need to enter the IP address for your Xbox (such as 192.168.0.2). It is helpful to enable SMB for this purpose (more on SMB settings shortly).

You can select Run from the Start menu in Windows or open a new Internet Explorer window. In the Location field, enter ftp: / /xbox/ to connect to your Xbox via FTP. Internet Explorer will try to connect, but you'll need to specify the username and password to complete the connection (you can also specify the username and password in the URL, such as: ftp://xbox:xbox@xbox/). So, right-click the blank screen in Internet Explorer (as shown in Figure 7.32) and select Login As. Then type xbox in both the Username and Password fields to connect. You will then see the Xbox file system, as shown in Figure 7.33.

```

IIIQHLL.MH... ,t-~rT^TT^——■
[ ■ I I '■-■, i fijpgiM I h H'-ip
A#0MMiiftf/f/ifaB /
hEndabW.I Type
•J
xbox
■■:■;■.-. ■;..■ * , m ■<:■
■■ f■. !■ -"r.i Ul ■ ..':■-nqFIP
ma.
i-It.UUiv.irAn tjmau

```

FIGURE 7h3j Connecting to the Xbox via FTP (using Internet Explorer).

```

V' f|(. (*■ F .....t | l--.h flfc,
4-tei - ■ i .;. h _.? i ,-.;■ m
AjW-1jn H; | »
lj 0,-1t-4i» |l**B*d 1
■J*.kMt.i ;/: 7:1:01 t&fp am
8ll.i.5s&ttfMBa l&WM
@*_rowji i,...r... ■ am
m!■;■■■: u/ fton mkbmw
Mf■«■. q QDJi
hbowdH*»iif*-;i,i,l,t,BAhM
■l«L»■ 1... & -■■■ ! IN
fl*■i.i :i." - ""
■/f.iilf■Brdi..IAH
|l'■: !■ ■ ],: ,.i. 1 1M3)AM
d ;i■'i 'j' 1 '. ta t*i "am
jlr*W"f HEU* 1 f!3tm 1 ■■ ....
■
■ i ■ z
m.u ij£u*4Htvm

```

FIGURE ?\*33 Browsing the Xbox file system via FTP.

Once in, you can use the familiar cut-and-paste or copy-and-paste operations to transfer files to and from your Xbox and PC. Be careful here because you can still delete files on your Xbox using FTP! You don't want to accidentally delete the Microsoft Dashboard because you won't be able

to use the dash any longer and will have to somehow get a copy of the correct dash from someone else to replace it. Be carefull

Telnet Settings

You can connect to your Xbox via Telnet because Xenium O/S includes a Telnet server. Telnet is mainly used during the development of Xenium O/S, so the Telnet commands are limited. The Telnet Settings screen is shown in Figure 7.34.

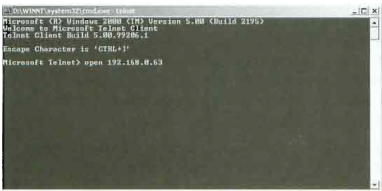


FIGURE 7,34 The Teinet Settings screen.

Basically, you see the same options here that you saw in the FTP Settings screen, with the ability to enable/disable the Telnet server and set the username and password. The Telnet server runs in the Xenium O/S by default, so you can use your favorite Telnet client to connect to your Xbox, or just use the command prompt in Windows, as shown in Figure 7.35.

ILUiAl.'jUiilIJ'JJ-I,

^i&xj





Connecting to your Xbox via Telnet.

152

## The Xenium Operating System

Open a command prompt (by choosing Start, Run and typing cmd), and then type telnet to start the Microsoft Telnet client. From there, type open followed by the IP address of your Xbox to connect; then type in the username and password (usually xbox for both). Once connected, you can type help to get a list of commands, as shown in Figure 7.36.

ii>;,i^mgfm^

Jfltetl



FIGURE 7,36 Displaying the commands in the Xenium Telnet server.

## SMB Settings

The SMB server provided by the Xenium O/S is awesome. This is the preferred method of accessing the hie system of your Xbox for transferring files back and forth. It is treated just like another PC on your network! For this reason alone, the Xenium is an excellent mod chip to choose, especially for a beginner who is new to modding.

Let's go over the configuration of SMB so you can connect to it from your PC. I am using Windows 2000, but the same rules apply to later versions of Windows, as well as to other systems. First, highlight and then select the SMB Settings option on the Settings menu, as shown in Figure 7.37.

You will be presented with the SMB Settings menu, shown in Figure 7.38. From here, you can completely configure the file-sharing settings of your Xbox (via the Xenium O/S).

You can set the share path, username, password, workgroup name, and even the server name for your Xbox. Although these options may be needed for some systems, you can leave them all at their defaults when your PC is running a modern version of Windows. You may be asked for the username and password the first time you connect to your Xbox, but the settings are usually retained for the next access. Of course, the most important setting is to enable the SMB Server itself, so make sure it is set to On.

After you have made any necessary changes to the file sharing settings, you can then connect: to your Xbox from your PC. The easiest way to do this is to use Windows Explorer (with the Location toolbar visible).

Type \ \xfaox for the location and press Enter.

153



FIGURE 7.37 The SMB Settings option.

OH3SW

Set Ctfcnl Uscrnmc Sii Client Password SMB Server - On Set Server Workqroup Set Server Name

FIGURE 7.38 The SMB Settings menu.



~3 &\*\*

K1 I type

I,

, Tl-rctJuiurMmr.

\_Jlff\*1\_|T,«\*»

f\*-FiAJL» F»Fi\*Jrt

FlrFuU#

."I- '•

0 19

I

lift ■>::■; r"

.:jr.-,cujji:nrn

IhttKK&WA\* !\*£Wim-tjki'M

i:/r7/2'3C]4:in.i

S.7Htr ^-|.:...:-,)ir,>,,

FIGURE 7\*40 Browsing the file system of the Xbox.

A word of caution: Be very, very careful what you do to the files on your Xbox hard drive using Windows Explorer. It's all too easy to ruin the default Microsoft Dashboard and render the Xbox unusable with anything other than an alternate dash (unless you somehow restore the files). The danger here is that you can delete files on the Xbox hard drive at will! Don't ever leave your Xbox file system exposed if anyone else has access to your PC, and better yet, never leave the Xbox running if you aren't around because a simple mistake can wipe entire folders off the Xbox drive. " With great power comes great responsibility...."

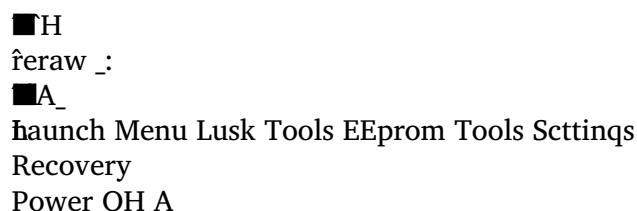
## The Xenium O/S Main Menu

155

Of course, the Xbox doesn't care whether you use it as a file server! I recommend creating a new folder if you want to store files on your Xbox. Imagine that you have secret files that you don't want anyone to find. Wouldn't it be cool to hide them on your Xbox instead of on your PC? This is exactly what we're going to do in Chapter 10 when I show you how to copy your favorite music and videos to the Xbox hard drive to turn it into a media server for the entertainment center in your living room.

### Reboot

The Reboot item on the main menu (shown in Figure 7.41) performs the simple task of rebooting your Xbox back into the Xenium O/S once again.



The screenshot shows a menu with several options. The 'Reboot' option is highlighted with a black bar. The menu items are: H, eraw \_:, A\_, haunch Menu Lusk Tools EEprom Tools Settings, Recovery, and Power OH A.

FIGURE 7.41 The Reboot menu item.

### Recovery

The Recovery item on the main menu (shown in Figure 7.42) allows you to restore the Xenium BIOS to the default settings in the event of a royal system screwup. For this to work, you must flip the "emergency recovery switch" on the Xenium before selecting this menu item to invoke recovery mode. You may also use Recovery to upgrade the Xenium OS, which will be out of beta and in full release form by the time you read this.

### Power Off

The Power Off item on the main menu (shown in Figure 7.43) simply shuts off the Xbox.

156

## The Xenium Operating System



F1GI

The Recovery menu item.

1n :  
Launch Menu kmk  
Disk Tools 1  
EEPROM Tools M  
Settings PW ^^|  
Reboot i\*v\*r  
Rccov\* i ^^

FIGURE 7.43 The Power Off menu item.

## Summary

This chapter provided an overview of the Xenium O/S that is built into the Xenium mod chip. This O/S runs when you turn on the power of your Xbox after the Xenium mod chip has been installed. In this chapter, you learned about the features of the Xenium O/S and learned how to connect to your Xbox from your PC to transfer files. I will discuss this topic and more in the next chapter on installing a new Dashboard.

## Dashboard

This chapter explains how to install and use the popular EvolutionX Dashboard. A Dashboard is a front end for the Xbox, a graphical user interface similar to KDE, Gnome, OS X, and Windows. In other words, EvolutionX gives the user control over the computer system. In the case of EvolutionX, it gives you more control over your Xbox than is available with the Microsoft Dashboard, and it provides services that work only when a mod chip has been installed. You will learn how to install the latest EvolutionX BIOS and Dashboard and configure the Xenium O/S (or the O/S for your mod chip, if different) to automatically run EvolutionX when you turn on your Xbox.

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- What Is EvolutionX?
- Installing EvolutionX
- Creating a custom BIOS
- Using the EvolutionX Dashboard
- Creating your own EvolutionX sk

### What Is EvolutionX?

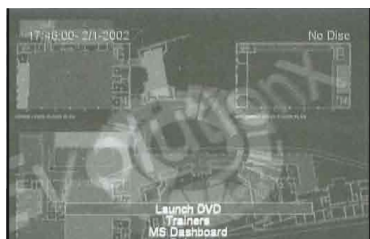
If you have never heard of EvolutionX before (which is very possible because it is not a widely advertised product), you may be wondering what EvolutionX is, why you might need it, and what it can do. So, let's discuss what EvolutionX can do for a minute before getting into the details of installing and using it.

EvolutionX (which was recently renamed to just EvoX) is a replacement for the Microsoft Dashboard (the familiar green interface that comes up when you turn on your Xbox without a disc in the DVD-ROM drive). Whereas the

## CHAPTER 8 EvolutionX Dashboard

Microsoft Dashboard can do little more than set the date and manage savegame files, a replacement such as EvoX is more like a complete operating system for your Xbox, above and beyond the mod chip O/S. You might recall that you mainly use the Xenium O/S (covered in the preceding chapter) to build a modded Xbox system by installing new BIOS images, creating launch items, installing and formatting new hard drives, and so on. EvoX, on the other hand, is all about the software.

There are two parts to EvoX: the EvoX Dash, and EvoX BIOS. At its core, EvoX Dash is basically just a launchpad itself for running other programs—which is, after all, the sole purpose of an operating system, to run other programs. No O/S is expected to have a full suite of applications and utilities built in, despite the feature bloat of modern systems. Figure 8.1 shows the start screen of EvoX.



RD Nairn: '

LiunchOVD

Tnlrwi MS Diihtowd Reboot y i 11 Power Off

Evolulh

FIGURE 8.

The EvoX Dash.

Installing the EvoX BIOS and Dash



Perhaps the most seemingly difficult aspect of modding your Xbox is installing a new Dashboard. But after reading the preceding chapter on using the Xenium O/S, you will surely agree with me that it is an easy task to access the Xbox file system, and therefore, it is possible to copy new files to the Xbox hard drive. I'll show you how to install the EvoX Dashboard shortly, but before you do that, your Xbox will need a new BIOS (also known as firmware). Why? The firmware provides the low-level hardware services such as task-switching and memory management that make it possible to write Xbox software using the XDK rather than low-level assembly language (as is the case with the Nintendo Game Boy Advance, which runs binary programs with a boot loader built

159

in, so to speak). Without the firmware acting as an O/S core, an Xbox programmer would have to write all the low-level hardware interface code.

## CAUTION

You will find the usual "militant hostility" from the Xbox community that you find in the open source community, so my advice is that you never ask for help unless it is on a forum and just keep looking for a BitTorrent link that will lead you to the EvoX package. Why is this so? It is a form of self-preservation, since much of this software was compiled with Microsoft's XDK without a license, so the distribution of this software is illegal.

## Acquiring EvoX

EvoX has a somewhat mysterious history and is something of an orphan, with a lack of formal ownership (it was created and is still maintained by "Team EvoX"). I am unable to direct you to a specific website where you may download either the EvoX BIOS or Dash. However, the creators of EvoX, who are named only by alias, maintain an informational website at

<http://www.evolutionjc.info>. Note that you will not find EvoX at

this site, only documentation.

What I can suggest, in order to acquire EvoX, is that you download BitTorrent from <http://bittorrent.com> and then find an Xbox fan website that hosts torrents where you will be able to get a copy of EvoX from another peer (which is how BitTorrent works, as a peer-to-peer file-sharing system).

What you are looking for is twofold: Remember, a dashboard replacement must include both the BIOS image and the Dashboard program. First, you need the EvoX BIOS image file. At the time of this writing, the latest version is M8 > but the M7 is probably a better choice because it can be customized (see the section "Creating a Custom BIOS" later in this chapter for details).

The second part you need is the EvoX Dash. Usually this will come with two files: `evoxdash.xbe` and `evox.ini`. You may also notice two folders called SKIN and TRAINERS (which are optional).

### Installing the EvoX Dashboard

The only practical way to install EvoX is to use a LAN connection, as described in the preceding chapter. Really, if you don't have a network to be able to transfer files between your Xbox and PC, you will be severely limited by what you can do with your modded Xbox anyway, so it's a necessity. You can use a hub or a router, both of which are as inexpensive (and essential) as the mod chip itself.

Installation of EvoX is simple when you have the files ready to be installed. First, connect to your Xbox using FTP or SMB (per the preceding chapter). Then copy `evoxdash.xbe` and `evox.ini`—as well as the SKIN and TRAINERS folders if you wish—to the C: partition on the Xbox hard drive.

EvoX inside a subfolder because the BIOS expects the Dashboard to be located in the root of C:.)

While you are at it, copy the M8. BIN file (the BIOS image) to the same location so you can install it from the Xenium O/S as a launch item later.

Believe it or not, that is all there is to installing the EvoX Dash, so you're all done as far as that goes, although you 11 want to read the next section to learn how to customize EvoX by modifying

the evox. ini file.

### Installing the EvoX BIOS

Okay, you've copied the EvoX files to your Xbox hard drive by one method or another, including the M8.BIN (or some as-yet-unknown new version of the BIOS). Next, you need to add a new launch item to the Xenium O/S via the Launch menu. The file system on the Xbox hard drive should look something like Figure 8.2.

h0d5ljf0,frm Plates  
a-L5■h,,iFctjMi |  
0Mc'w<Link■> .i i  
0ypdrf■dji  
HjMSjGHH?rspw  
HibxI■p■etl;;6PM  
i|fortfl. ■ ' -. Fd\* PaAjw  
Jihii  
M7M100R■inlinarM  
FN i.■-': :J- fell S&&R  
■K■qjWtMHO. AM  
27:02MR,■H'for\* 6 PM  
HjG,ii linM 7;.:JPM  
0jy0210\_!■HVMZPM 1 — /\_J:".■" \_:■ 111 Hilt\*\*  
■:iT!:ii.  
J8)■ick(■.-'■5 m  
Hj0rjuli^;.- "■■!  
■HjMffie\*.

FIGURE 8.2 The EvoX BIOS and Dash files have been copied to the

Xbox hard drive.

You will notice two BIN files in the file list: M8.BIN and M8\_16.BIN. If you own a revision 1.6 and have successfully installed a mod chip in it, you'll want to use the M8\_16.BIN file, which was created specifically for that new revision (1.6 is somewhat different than older versions, as you have learned). You do not want to install a standard M8.BIN BIOS in your Xbox 1.6, so if you aren't absolutely sure which version of the BIOS you have, chances are it is not for the 1.6, and you need to find the correct one for your Xbox. All other revisions will use the standard M8.BIN.

If your Xbox is running, turn it off by pressing the power button. Then, bring up the Xenium O/S by pressing the eject button. (Pressing the eject button brings up the O/S regardless of any default launch item that is configured to run automatically after the power button is pressed.) Next, open the Launch menu, as shown in Figure 8.3.

161

V

Retail Kernel™. ■

Id A New 11 Remove An Item Rename An Item Sd DcfoUfl item  
I

FIGURE 83 The Xenium O/S Launch menu.

At this point, you are going to install the M8.BIN image file (containing the EvoX BIOS) into a bank in the Xenium's memory. From the Launch menu, select Add A New Item to bring up the screen shown in Figure 8.4.

now

Where would you like this item to be

Hash Hard Disk

Set Default Item

FIGURE 8.4 Selecting the source for the BIOS image file.

Select the second option, Flash, to bring up a list of drives found in your Xbox. If you have a disc in the DVD-ROM drive, the D: drive will be shown. If you have already upgraded your hard drive to a larger model, you may see an F: and perhaps even a G: partition. There is another

162

## CHAPTER 8 EvoiutionX Dashboard

possibility: If you have inserted the USB adapter (included with the Xenium mod chip) with a flash memory device, it will be identified as drive H: by your Xbox.

Because you need to copy the Dashboard files to the hard drive anyway, there is no practical reason to use a flash memory card for the BIOS image. Ail things being equal, all you really care about at this point are the files you copied to the C: drive from your PC. Select the C: drive from the list, as shown in Figure 8.5.

p  
0 nl < k  
!;  
/  
J ^

FIGURE 8.5 Opening the C: drive to browse for the EvoX files.

### NOTE

If you are using a different version of the BIOS, you will want to locate that file rather than the one I suggest here as an example.

When you select the C: drive, you should then see a screen that resembles Figure 8.6, showing the files on the root of C:. If you already copied the EvoX files to your Xbox, you should see the evoxdash .xbe,

evox . ini, and perhaps the SKIN and TRAINERS folders as well. Most important at this stage is the M8. BIN file, which contains the new BIOS image. Select the M8. BIN file.

The Xenium O/S will try to auto-detect the name of the BIOS and fill in the name for you, but if it cant figure out what type of BIOS is stored in the file you selected, you will get a blank name field. Enter a descriptive name for the BIOS image you have chosen, using the screen shown in Figure 8.7.

Next, you have an opportunity to choose a color for the programmable LED buffi into the Xenium (see Figure 8.8). Color choices include Reel, Green, Amber, Blue, Purple, Teal, and White,

## Installing The EvoX BIOS and Dash

163

or you can choose to turn off the LED for this BIOS bank. The Xenium O/S will then display the screen shown in Figure 8.9 while it copies the image file into a BIOS memory bank.

Choose o I lie

\_ XBojc Etookjrtrl Kboxxtl

Rt

P TraiTKts\

- xodash\

lonts\

xboxdashxbc

)

FIGURE 8.6 Locating and selecting the BIOS image file.

— - - - -

Pick o bonk name

EvolutionX MS Cops 01 23456789 SLjm o b c d € f q h i | Del  
klmnopqrst Doric u v w x y z Space

FIGURE 8.7 Entering a name for the BIOS image.

You can now launch the EvoX BIOS, which will in turn execute the evoxdash.xbe file you copied to the C: partition. Figure 8.10 shows the Launch menu with the new item added.

i 64 is EvolutionX Dashboard

^^ — on

Re fail I Rcd ,. , ,. Gp

Add a Am

pemov B,wt

Rncm purPk

SctDc Tcal White

FIGURE S\*8 Choosing a color for Xenium's programmable LED.

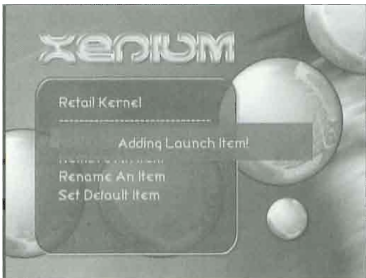


FIGURE 8.9 The BIOS image file is added to the Xenium flash memory.

## Creating a Custom BIOS

165

oo»i



FIGURE 8JO The new launch item is now available.

## Creating a Custom BIOS

You can run a very useful program called XBtool on your PC to modify an Xbox BIOS file, customizing the various options on your Xbox. This program is available for download at <http://home.alltel.net/nghtshd/xbtool.html>. Figure 8.11 shows XBtool with a custom BIOS file that I have modified. Of course, you can download fully customized BIOS files, but you can just as easily get XBtool and customize your own BIOS.

### NOTE

If you have a modded Xbox 1.6, then you will need to use EVTool (<http://home.alltel.net/nghtshd/evtool.html>) to customize the EvoX M8 BIOS, which is the only BIOS that works with the 1.6.

Just click the Open button, choose a  
BIN file, and then customize away! In  
this figure, I have created a custom  
version of the M7 BIOS: I have  
increased the Xbox fan speed to 50%,



set the Xbox power light to cycle

(from red to green to orange—a very cool effect that you should try out!), and enabled LBA48

support. (At the time of this writing, XBtool doesn't support M8, but a modified M7 will still

more than get the job done!)

This last option is crucial when you are replacing your stock Xbox hard drive with a larger capacity drive, such as the 250GB Maxtor 7200-RPM drive I am using. Without the LBA48 option, your Xbox will not be able to handle a hard drive that is larger than 137GB—and even if you do install one using two partitions, the G: partition will not be usable without LBA48 support built into the BIOS. (See Chapter 12, "Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive," for more information.) Of course, one

166

## CHAPTER 8 EvofutionX Dashboard

option is to just install a hard drive with 137GB or less storage space—which is, Til admit, a ton of space for storing music files, video files, and programs.

..' J- J

czzzi

J.JJU

H4 B ^fc- CD C3 \

E\*6ki\*iff M'J. llfi.HM! ..iI

~tahc»yrf |

!v LHiHCi 1. ± -Jed -JilM,.,!

nJ nw

f . -I L ti • O;.\i

r-.,-i • '4fwn

-■ - ■•■«

3

■ ~«■ - s« . . < ;■-.

■ \* : "i p 1 R 5taga2

lit 7" | PI I • ■ " . ■ de\*. £■ 2nd ^ o\ I < api-.iiiiisi-i..D-i

jir1 \*a 2I ci r~

I- tgn«\*Hai'jU: ^ f«taianTeWf

He- ■'■-

~~JavaSHK~~etw

SJ ] LftipacK, I PaA. |

• ;

■ 1 •.■:

FIGURE 8.1 I Customizing the Xbox BIOS with XBtool.

Feel free to modify the BIOS file in different ways and then try them out using the Xenium O/S Launch menu. And get this—you can even install multiple versions of the same BIOS with different options! Did you notice that in the M7\_Custom.bin file I created (back in Figure 8.11), the evoxdash. xbe file is specified as the first default executable? You can use this technique to configure the same BIOS (such as EvoX M7) to launch multiple Dashboards. Chapter 9 covers the Avalaunch Dashboard, and Chapter 10 covers Xbox Media Center, yet another Dashboard that is more focused on media playback. In these upcoming chapters, I will show you how to use XBtool to configure the same BIOS used by EvoX to fire up

these other Dashboards automatically. The alternative—without setting them as launch items—is to run one of the alternates from within EvoX, which defeats the purpose of having a multifaceted list of launch items, made possible by Xenium's large flash memory bank (2MB doesn't seem like much, but the BIOS files are only 256KB each).

After you have the configuration you want, just click the Save As button to save the BIOS to a new file; then copy it over to the Xbox hard drive and install it as a new launch item.

167

## Using the EvoX Dash

The best overall feature of EvoX is the ease with which it can be customized. The interface uses a simple menu system with a scrolling highlight bar that you move up or down with the D-pad. You can edit the EvoX menu by simply modifying the evox. ini file.

## Tweaking EvoX Dash

Let's take a look at the evox. ini file to see what kinds of options are available. Figure 8.12 shows the evox. ini file loaded into Notepad. Most of these options cannot be edited from within EvoX, so you'll need to modify them on your PC and then copy the evox.ini file over to your Xbox again whenever you need to modify it. Alternatively, you can open the evox. ini file directly on your Xbox if you have SMB enabled (as a network share).

```
file: \\.\C:\ponrii Hot
m*&
kUCQLilfncttfti*t«
■ ■ uLi'JI'l'hPL'D
pwt&Tiyti ■ 1-rL.u ii-1" vi r. .\,:
NGreu-auniliMirJi.
■ AU5UeP*8>ler.*he
■ i,j,j. li~jiriibe'
l8seF&ri"-]
```

```

■, ■---,[,-1 E
■bin'lihtd
U50ltams
$,.-,- ...-j , ± r
Nprenfmlt
?■.leL5«*1
■iitUUiMAfiT
■4_. app-lP
Zb»»> el = at3L^ci
■
p8*
&3itsMg4ittn
.'■■■■' ■ " j
Sstuphetwor!
■55; "r
fP:'.l'r-v. u. "".'
sfcf#etni < i*i
Bif4itltgat«way
■er0.0
.:Diu. .
■tufjie 1ft -i i| if noli r*
■

```

FIGURE 8.12 The EvoX settings file.

In addition to all the settings here, you can also create simple scripts that will run based on a certain menu item. You can do quite a bit with EvoX just using the built-in scripting language (you can even format a partition using a simple command, so be careful when playing around with the EvoX script). For more details on the script commands available, check the documentation on <http://www.evolutionx.info>.

The really important thing to do in the `evox.ini` file is configure the network settings for your Xbox to match your LAN situation. You may want to set `StaticIP = No` to use DHCP, which will auto-assign an IP address to your Xbox. I prefer to use a static IP most of the time, as you can see in Figure 8.12. After you have verified that the network settings will work on your LAN, save the

CHAPTER 8 EvolittionX Dashboard

file and transfer it to your Xbox. If you have already installed everything per the preceding section you can launch EvoX from the Xenium O/S Launch menu, or you can select Reboot from the EvoX main menu. That selection will restart the EvoX Dash and pull in the evox.ini file again.

The EvoX Dash Interface

The EvoX interface has a main menu with seven items on it by default: Launch DVD, Trainers, MS Dashboard, Reboot, Power Off, System Utils, and Launch Menu. You can edit this menu by modifying evox.ini. Let's take a look at each item in the menu.

NOTE

You probably don't need to be reminded of something so trivial, but in the EvoX menus, button A selects, while button B returns.

Launch DVD

The Launch DVD item (see Figure 8.13) will perform a different task based on what type of disc is in the DVD-ROM drive. If an audio CD is in the drive, Launch DVD will execute the standard Xbox CD player (part of the Microsoft Dashboard), after which you will have to power down and turn on the Xbox again to get back to EvoX. (The Xbox Media Center can play CDs and DVDs natively—more on that in Chapter 12.)



XBOX MODS

FIGURE 8.13 CDs, DVDs, and games can be played from EvoX.

If you have a DVD movie in the drive, Launch DVD will also run the default Xbox DVD player from the Microsoft Dashboard. More than likely, you'll use this option to run a game you have inserted into the drive. You can configure EvoX to auto-launch any of these types of media when a disc is inserted.

## Trainers

The Trainers submenu (shown in Figure 8.14) will include a list of every trainer EvoX finds in the TRAINERS folder (which you may or may not have copied to the C: partition earlier). You can download new trainers for various games from Xbox fan sites such as <http://www.xboxscenexom>. The "official" EvoX Dash trainer archive is located at <http://trainers.maxconsole.com>.



## XBOX MODI

FIGURE 8.14 Trainers allow you to "cheat" in some games.

## MS Dashboard

The MS Dashboard option will jump out of EvoX and run the Microsoft Dashboard, the standard interface for the Xbox without a mod chip. I won't go into the problematic issues of logging on to the Xbox Live network with a mod chip because a lot of modders have been banned from playing on Live with a modded Xbox. If you do want to go to the Xbox Live configuration screen, this is one way to do so.

## Reboot and Power Off

The Reboot option (shown in Figure 8.15) will reboot EvoX, not the entire Xbox. You can use this option any time you have transferred new software or media to the Xbox hard drive and want EvoX to "pick it up" for use. This is especially true when you add a new homebrew application or game to the hard drive and want EvoX to display the new items in the Launch menu. The Power Off option is self-explanatory.

## 70 CHAP EvolutionX Dashboard



### XBOX MODS

FIGURE 8 J 5 You can quickly reboot EvoX to rebuild the menu.

### System Utils

The System Utils menu, shown in Figure 8.16, contains four items by default: Settings, Flash BIOS, Backup, and Skins. I won't get into the Flash and Backup choices because those are features best left alone, but the Settings and Skins options are very interesting. Select the Settings option to bring up the Settings/Info screen shown in Figure 8.17.

When you first install EvoX Dash, you should run the Backup option once to preserve the settings.



### XBOX MODS

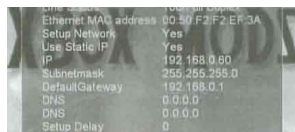
FIGURE 8\*16 The System Utils menu.

### Using the EvoX Dash

EvolutionX ffVS\*WnA f IUI«MI1» 25/9\*2004 DVD' Settings/Info

Line SEtfr\* UW

Etherrie! MAC adtirtui 00



**FIGURE 8.17** The Settings/Info screen displays info about your Xbox.

You can scroll down the list of information about your Xbox, which is a dynamic listing—meaning that the information is refreshed continually. If you are transferring files to the Xbox hard drive using FTP or SMB, you can go here to look at the free space on each partition while the files are being copied to see the changes.

A lot of the items in this listing can be edited if you select one, but many are just read-only. For instance, you can enable or disable the servers (FTP, SMB, Telnet) from the Settings/Info screen, but you can't change the video standard. (If you do make any changes, you will need to scroll down to the bottom of the list to choose the Save And Exit option, or your changes will be ignored). Look at Figure 8.18, which shows the free space on the hard drive partitions.

You can see another interesting part of the Settings list, the temperature readings in your Xbox case, in Figure 8.19. If you want to experiment with some active cooling options for your Xbox, such as a side-vent cooler (available from <http://www.modchipman.com>, among other sources), you can attach the cooler to your Xbox and watch the temperature change—rather quickly I might add. By opening the Xbox case and setting a standard PC cooling fan pointing down right on top of the CPU, you can get the CPU temperature down to less than 100 degrees. Unfortunately, there is no elegant way to apply active cooling to an Xbox because the case is so cramped.

The other item on the Settings menu, Skins, is covered in "Creating Your Own EvoX Skins" later in the chapter.



X

vwftmtfk

m



FIGURE 8J8 The free space available on the hard drive partitions.

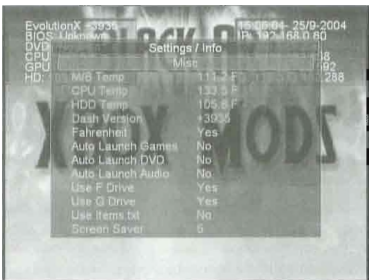


FIGURE 8,19 Three temperature values are displayed.

### Launch Menu

The Launch menu (shown in Figure 8.20) is the most useful part of EvoX; it lets you run any custom software you have installed on your Xbox hard drive. EvoX automatically scans the C, E, and P partitions for three folders: Games, Apps, and Emulators. If any of these folders are found on any of the aforementioned partitions, EvoX will add any programs it finds to the associated menu. It is up to you to create these folders when you install software on your Xbox hard drive.



## XBOX MODS

Ciam\*n

FIGURE S.20 The Launch menu in EvoX.

### Creating Your Own EvoX Skins

Have you been wondering how I created the custom skin shown in the figures in this chapter? I\*1J show you in this section how to create your own custom Xbox skin.

EvoX Dash comes with some sample skins you can use. To browse the list of available skins, go to the System Utils menu and select Skins. The resulting screen is shown in Figure 8.21, with the first skin selected (called Original).

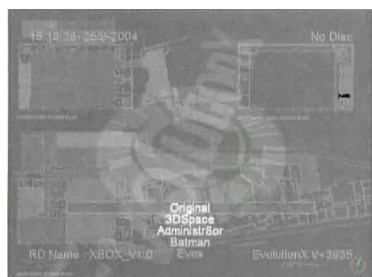


FIGURE 8.2f The Skin menu in EvoX.

## CHAPTER 8 EvolutionX Dashboard

You can scroll up and down the list of skins and select each one to see what it looks like. Note that EvoX skins can have a graphic background as well as text items showing various data about the Xbox, and you can also insert your own "launching" bitmap that is displayed whenever a launch item is executed.

EvoX skins are stored in a folder called Skin (note it is singular) on the root of the C: partition. Each skin should be in its own

subfolder, with one or two JPEG files for the background and loading images, as well as a skin . ini file that describes the skin.

Here is what a skin file looks like:

# Skinned By:Jonathan S. Harbour

SkinName "Xbox Mods","Xbox Mods"

[Skin Xbox Mods]

```
#5x15,1,0xf2ff06,0,on >
#5x63,1,0xf2ff06,0,"
#5x01,1,0xf2ff06,0,
#5x79,1,Damf2ff06,0,
#5x97,1,Damf2ff06,0,
#5x115,Tomf2ff06,0
#5x25c1>0xf2ff06,0
#5x243H>0Xf2ff06,0
#5x265ph,c0cf2ff06)0
#5x279phI0Ff2ff06,0
#5x289sph,c0Hf2ff06,0
#5x2115,1,0xf2ff06,0,"G: < SpaceG >"
LogoType = 4
```

Main = ,\skin\Xbox Mods\xboxmods1.jpg" Launch = "\skin\Xbox Mods\xboxmods2.jpg"

```
BarColor1 = 0x004080 BarColor2 = 0X0080FF BarAlpha = .5
MenuColor1 = 0xFFFFFFFF MenuColor2 = 0x004000
```

You can edit the skin. ini file directly, which is rather hit-and-miss, or you can use a skin editor program called EvoX Skin Creator (shown in Figure 8.22), written by Anand Patel. You can download this program from <http://evoxsc.anandpatel.com>. On the primary tab in the program, you can select background and loading images used by the skin.

## Creating Your Own EvoX Skins

Fl|I|8»\* |  
 4enr-dl, jLiWJil Ptc--.- ilJMcf'l  
 ::. ■• ■'■■■ !■' jilt Initio  
 KkihckIhiki!!!  
 XBOX MODS  
 l,kifi.i.liii,u2 lUibiiili  
 i N^tnc  
 |- Wi \*  
 :■■. m ^ljacMCWriBtatt1.  
 |I ■io\* M--d:.'b5iMt)ifct  
 ■'ig.E--c ■ =lin CWeckhv  
 I|,,,  
 †-5fdc-irWu'i.-'k.s L-iK,|[ jj:i,™ ^  
 uosduijtmage  
 XBOX MOD!  
 [L&MSKIfIKI©  
 1 .■;-■:■: ■ ■: | Oiun ,c

FIGURE 8.22 The EvoX Skin Creator program allows you to create custom skins.

Most of your work on an EvoX skin will be done in the Layout tab of the program, shown in Figure 8.23.

FlffHtlPiyB—

General L«o«( | previa\* | BWn

': ■ " : •':-ii'1



'RlfICK

OH

XBOX MODS

fl(SM

■ CRI.F. -CoMQtRr'iu'

■ IF .I\* Arisen

H ' ' ■.'erwn

■ROM\*1> >-(nDT0iJL5| ipoc\*t: ■ \$pac\* ftsa on Dn(k> B C ^fHJMt -  
SpX\* Ftod m Dura E 7 - Spaci Fie\*onDNvvF SpaceG ■ Space Fi s#  
an Efic/e G - riM «n Dlt™ X , , ■ -i . • FjefrniDiffHY

. reFi DiiiwZ

Tin ■ 7,..- .i. !['■■.

. -McdtdviadTn..Tmm& ■ CPU Tit^ewiwj\*

i i . -i l-l-iidun.-s ' --i.per-sftno

..'^x

T\*!DeT!JMvni:< pfttfi '

!JfBt!v!Mp t%o

!JfBt!v!Mp t%o

!JfBt!v!Mp t%o

!JfBt!v!Mp t%o

!JfBt!v!Mp t%o

i am

i

FIGURE 8.25 Editing the text layers of an EvoX skin.

You can get a general idea of what your skin will look like by using the Preview tab (shown in Figure 8.24), which shows an estimation of what your skin will look like in the real EvoX. You will need to be conservative with the positioning of text items because the TV screen is never exactly like the screen you see in this program. I

have noticed that a widescreen TV can display almost the entire background image and placement of text layers, but a normal 4:3 TV will crop on the left, right, and bottom. You can figure out what works and what doesn't through trial and error, and you will get the hang of it.



## XBOX MODS

Mi'ihī [tern

fvMIUll- I

FIGURE 8.24 Editing the text layers of an EvoX skin.

When editing, I've found that it helps to just leave the Xbox on. I'll make changes to a skin, save it, copy it to the Xbox, and then reboot EvoX to see the result. When you see what options are available, you'll have a lot of fun creating your own custom skins about your favorite subjects, I personally just really like to have a light-colored skin with as much information about my Xbox as possible, which is why my Xbox Mods skin displays temperature, free space, IP address, and so on, right there on the main menu of EvoX.

After you have created a new skin, you'll want to make a new folder for it, copy the images and skin. ini file to the new folder, and then copy that folder to C: \SKIN. You can then reboot EvoX so it will see the new skin. At that point, you can go into System Utils, Skins and scroll down to find your new skin, as I have down in Figure 8.25.

A good resource for pre-made skins is located at <http://www.allxboxskins.com>. If you create a really cool skin, you may want to submit your skin to this archive for others to use.



## XBOX MODS

FIGURE 8.25 The new Xbox Mods skin is now available in EvoX.

### Summary

This chapter provided a complete overview of EvoX, the combination BIOS and Dashboard replacement for your Xbox, giving it a lot more power and functionality. You learned how to install a new BIOS, install the new Dashboard, and customize and use EvoX, which was really designed for modding. In the next two chapters, I will go over two more Dashboard replacements that you may find interesting in addition to EvoX!

### Avalaunch Dashboard

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- Installing Avalaunch
- Avalaunch features
- Running games and applications
- Using the File Manager m Configuring the Dash

This chapter will show you how to install and use the Avalaunch Dash, an alternative Dash that is similar to EvoX but with a different set of features and a menu system that is more friendly. Avalaunch is a multithreaded Dash, which means that it supports multitasking. You can copy files with the File Manager while browsing other parts of the Dash at the same time. I'll go over the major features of the Avalaunch Dash in this chapter. Note that it is a pre-alpha version at this point, so a few things are likely to change by the time you read this chapter.

## Installing Avalaunch

Acquiring Avalaunch is similar to what you will have to do to find EvolutionX because it is not advertised online, not offered for sale, and not available for download. You will have to search for Avalaunch on a BitTorrent site as your best choice. The home page on the Web for Avalaunch is <http://www.teamavalaunch.com>, where you can read up on the latest news about this Dash.

When you have a copy of Avalaunch on your PC, extract the archive file (usually a ZIP), and you will most likely find a default. xbe file (the executable for Avalaunch) as well as a settings file called avalaunch. xml. Two folders should also be included with Avalaunch: MEDIA and SHOUTCAST.

180

## CHAP Ft. Avalaunch Dashboard

Now let's go over the procedure to install Avalaunch on your Xbox. You can copy the Dash to your Xbox hard drive and run it directly from EvolutionX, but that's not a very good way to launch it. Instead, you really should install Avalaunch as a launch item in your Xenium O/S Launch menu (or applicable menu in your mod chip, if different).

## Customizing a BIOS for Avalaunch

Okay, first things first: You need to customize a BIOS so that it will run Avalaunch from the Xenium O/S Launch menu. If you don't already have XBtool (which was discussed in the preceding chapter), browse some of the Xbox fan websites to locate XBtool and download it (the homepage is at <http://home.alltel.net/nghtshd/xbtool.html>). This program allows you to customize an Xbox BIOS (in other words, you are Modeling the BIOS. You will also need a BIOS image file for this procedure. I recommend the EvolutionX M7 BTOS because it works well with XBtool, but if you own a revision 1.6 you'll need to use EvoX M8 and EVTool instead, because M7 doesn't work on the 1.6. Feel free to use a different



BIOS if you wish; I based this tutorial on what works and is simple to use but am aware that you can customize other BIOSes just as well. You can locate the EvolutionX M7 from the same location you found the EvolutionX Dash or Avalaunch, usually as a torrent link.

When you run XBtool, click the Open button to locate a BIOS file that you want to edit. The only setting that I want you to pay attention to is the group of fields called Boot Partitions and Executables, shown in Figure 9.1.

-I I x|

hH b -^ cd a 1

\*i\*tqNtyfr

I 1

UHfa|£viH47l?ft.tto

TjtMrtiriiji'o Hiiii itii ■ ■

. - .^J££FCI0OUAJJ«E

■: \*wMD5r\*cWk\*mi

1^" Artfndlitfi v :•: i. ;

W Trid^Muil Symbol P SfilastiLogs

r DJikrl £vp. Mr

fepgPlHMnf J\*fiiJI-#:yHrt\*i\*

Akfl LEJiCab

; j

\* «Jf«Fi

I'VE' |ilH'\*j|f.4rt!

pj-^t \*\* ±\ «a 1

P 1AM | mi andfVsf ■:- H ii. m-.tn-i.-.

<ftU£1)pc

r

(fed 7". hjc;

"H,

ř"rOff

Pi««t\*

■ ■ ■ l(■ l(■ ■ ! 1

r EmtMKiHDKfiy

1

1

Filv "i,v i-ii."

Mk■ l. i > v,.

inad

«1 ||££«, |

FIGURE 9.1 Modding an EvoX M7 BIOS.

I have edited the first item in the boot order and filled in avalaunch \def ault .xbe for the filename of the executable. The DVD field stays at default. xbe, while the second and third fields are left blank. The purpose of this change is to point the BIOS bootstrap routine to execute the default .xbe file inside C: \avalaunch instead of running default .xbe in the root of the drive. If you prefer, you can just as easily rename Avalaunch's default.xbe to something like avalaunch. xbe and then point the BIOS to that file, stored on the root of C. You have a lot of options with it, so do what you want in that regard. I decided that I wanted to put "alternate" Dashboards in their own subfolders, where EvolutionX is basically the only Dash on the root of C. Even in that case, it might make more sense to put EvolutionX in its own subfolder as well because you may end up with several Dashboards for your Xbox, each with different features that you may find useful now and then.

## Copying the Avalaunch Files to Your Xbox

Although it's not necessary, I usually leave the modified BIOS file with the Dash files, so in this case, I've saved the new version of this M7 BIOS (which is configured to run C: \avalaunch\default.xbe) in the folder containing the Avalaunch files. Figure 9.2 shows the folder at this point.

```
1 fe h\ttwn Hlff\4V*tMilnit
FJo £fc $f>< Ffftrtes look Tjsto
Mij £SMTfih -^jr-j,- %
NMi, 1 |
BAMRSt:-i AM
kng,DkQ'(tm:...i am
WdHOMMFi m t.
jWtPAC fivh J-M
5*jHME-EE for n to Vtmt r_. ■;<?■:■:: i^rson. _*| I'..-'Hnr. Lit
> **:*)>:
-, fl,' >:tnipJtei
$ark**rt£*)
```

FIGURE 9.2 Folder containing files for running Avalaunch, including the BIOS.

Copy this entire folder to your Xbox's C drive, using either SMB or FTP, which are available from the Xenium O/S. Because you'll need to add Avalaunch to the Xenium O/S Launch menu anyway, it makes sense to boot up with Xenium O/S (instead of EvolutionX, if you already have that Dash installed). After you have copied the files, you should have a folder called C: \avalaunch on your Xbox hard drive.

## Adding Avalaunch to the Xenium O/S Launch Menu

If your Xbox is turned on (such as in EvolutionX), turn it off now and then press the eject button to bring up the Xenium O/S. Open the Launch menu, as shown in Figure 9.3, and select Add A New Item.

9 Avalaunch Dashboard



FIGURE

The Xenium O/S Launch menu.

You will then see the screen shown in Figure 9.4, asking for the source of the launch item. Select the item called Flash.



CURE 9.4 Adding a new BIOS to the Launch menu.

Next, you will see the screen shown in Figure 9.5, asking for the location of the source file containing the BIOS image you want to add as a launch item.

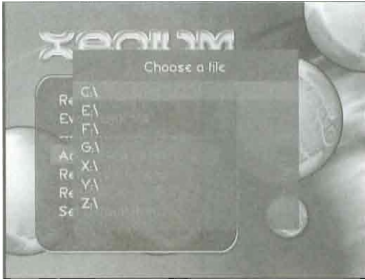


FIGURE 9.5 Selecting the partition where the BIOS file is located. Browse the C:\ drive and select C: \avalaunch, as shown in Figure 9.6.

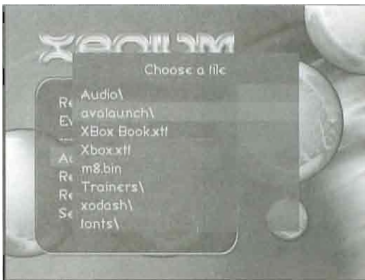


FIGURE 9\*6 Browsing to the C: \avalaunch folder.

You should see the Avalaunch files you copied to the hard drive, including the new hacked BIOS file, which I have named Aval\_M7. bin, as shown in Figure 9.7. Then select the BIOS file you wish to use.



FIGU

Selecting the BIOS file to add to the Launch menu.

The Xenium O/S will try to identify the BIOS and fill in the name for you, but some BIOS files don't have a proper name, so you may have to type in the name yourself. Since this M7 file is used to launch the Avalaunch Dash anyway, I have renamed it to Avalaunch, as shown in Figure 9.8.

B^S!\$uH  
Wck a bank name  
Avalaunch  
1 Cops 0 12 3 15 6 7  
S06 a b c d € f q h  
Del k 1 rn n o p q r  
Done u v w x q z Spi

FIGURE 9.8 Renaming the new launch item.

Next, choose a color for the programmable LED, and it will show that color when you run this launch item (see Figure 9.9).

### Installing Avalaunch

oum

—

Off  
Red

Exit  
 Amber  
 Blue A  
 Runnv  
 tteMm  
 ttef,,

FIGURE 9,9 Choosing a color for the programmable LED.

You should then see an "Adding Launch Item!" message come up on the screen (see Figure 9.10). While this message is being displayed, the Xenium O/S is copying the binary BIOS file into its onboard memory, which means that the Aval\_M7.bin file is no longer needed after it has been installed in the Xenium.



FIGURE 9,tO The BIOS file is added to the Xenium's memory.

You will then have a new item in the Launch menu that you can use to run Avalaunch directly. Give it a try to make sure the launch item is working properly.

## CHAPTER 9 Avalaunch Dashboard

### Running Avalaunch

Avalaunch is more convenient than the EvoX Dash, in ray opinion, because the main functionality that you need regularly is right there on the main menu, as shown in Figure 9.11.

H  
 <\ H . ■  
 n^ll-j.^f-JIL.: ■rJil',11 ,l«/j| . || liil |fj . H  
 ħjīH4 k^Ji^UjO = iLila^ .ia-J\*WlUW^JL^-ll 111 r  
 \m\\ of n&mtjBTBncQlbefof^lh&flrn  
 [i i:i upj | Mil ■ [disc LJS  
 ■\\[\,t Ui IJ.V. 1

FIGURE 9\*15 Viewing the list of available savegames online.

When you select a savegame from the list, Avalaunch will download the savegame file (showing the download progress on the bottom-right corner of the screen) and store it with your other saves for that game on the hard drive where the game expects to find it (see Figure 9.16).

### Viewing the Game's Properties

Again, returning to the context menu (which you bring up by pressing Start on a game in the Games list), select the Properties option to display the properties for a game, as shown in Figure 9.17.

### Installing Games

You may be wondering how to install your Xbox games onto your hard drive. You will need a larger drive for starters (see Chapter 12, "Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive") because the stock Xbox hard drive has only about 3 4GB free, which is enough for maybe one game install. The easiest way to install your retail Xbox game collection onto your new high-capacity hard drive is

## CHAPTER 9 Avalaunch Dashboard

to use a program called dvd2xbox, available as a download from within Avalaunch (I'll cover the Download menu shortly), or you can find it at any number of Xbox fan sites. As I explained in Chapter 1, "Welcome lo the Xbox Scene,'1 you have a right to install



your retail Xbox games on the hard drive to speed up load time and make it more convenient to play your games, as long as your one license is not illegally shared. In addition, installing your games allows you to keep your retail game library in good condition by shelving the discs rather than constantly inserting and removing them from the Xbox DVD-ROM tray; this kind of use will gradually wear out a disc over time due to micro scratches.

; .

i

l^ri'Jr'



FIGURE 9.16 The savegame file is being downloaded from an online server.

nu&

JfZ

•) lUJCj'J i« ■. 'I \t\\ ^11 III'. J

H-t. i!ji|j,j ,Ji

F'fl'l u \

jimn\*\HalliLir'\*GiiferJurk/yi|\*pi:

tjflilUhB

? 1



1 7 The properties screen for a game stored on the hard drive.

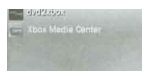
I will give you a brief, fair warning here and now, because it needs to be said: If you illegally copy Xbox games, you are breaking the law. There are serious penalties for pirating software—and yes, people are sent to jail for it!—so just don't do it. Not only is software piracy illegal, bottom line, it's a huge waste of your game-playing time. Why go to all the trouble to copy games when you can just purchase a new game every month (or whenever you can afford it) and play it through? I mean, come on, who has time for that? Take pride in your hobby and take it seriously, or else you will not really enjoy it. Respect the power of your modded Xbox and support the hard-working people who produce these fantastic games.

## Applications

The Applications menu checks the C, E, F, and G drives for an \Apps folder to produce the list of applications displayed in this menu (shown in Figure 9.18). A context menu (similar to the one in the Games menu) comes up when you press Start while highlighting an app in the list.

cav - i

H



' n . .' I I M j

FIGURE 9.18 The Applications menu.

## Emulators

The Emulators menu also checks the work drives for an \Emulators folder to produce a list of emulation programs that you have

installed on your Xbox hard drive. It is similar in function to both the Games and Applications menus.

### File Manager

The File Manager built into Avalaunch is a powerful and useful tile management tool (see Figure 9.19). Using the File Manager, you can copy entire folders from one location to another on your

192

### CHAPTER 9 Avalaunch Dashboard

Xbox hard drive, and you can delete files and folders. Best of all, you can execute programs on the hard drive directly, just as you can on your PC (using Windows Explorer or a similar file browser in your favorite O/S).



FIGURE 9,19 The File Manager.

### Running Programs

To run a program, just browse for any file that has an extension of .xbe (which might stand for Xbox Executable, though no one seems to know for sure) with the File Manager and select it by pressing the A button. Thanks to this great utility program, you can run programs on your Xbox hard drive without adding them to a menu first.

### Copying Files

Let me show you how to copy a folder from one location to another on your Xbox hard drive because the File Manager is a bit confusing at first. It has two panes, left and right. You can bring up a menu by pressing Start over any folder or file, from which you can rename, move, or delete it, among other things. But if you just want to copy, highlight the source on the left and use the D-pad to move to the right file browser to locate a destination. You can press the A button to open a folder or B to close it.

To copy, you press the X button. Now here's the interesting part: The source folder is whichever one is currently active. So, you can move to the right side and press X; then the right side will be the source, and the left side will be the destination. When you do this, the action is added to the transfer queue. Press Start to bring up the context menu; then select the Transfer Queue option (shown in Figure 9.20).

## Running Avalaunch

193



FIGURE 9.20 The context menu in the File Manager.

When you select this option, the File Manager will perform the tasks in the transfer queue. Figure 9.21 shows a folder (XBMC) being copied to another partition. To exit the File Manager, press Start and then select Main Menu. Note that the File Manager retains its present status when you leave, as it is running in the background, so it will look the same when you return.



FIGURE 9.21 Copying files from one partition to another in the File Manager.

194

Ava launch Dash board

IRC Client

Surprisingly enough, the IRC Client option really does give you a client program to connect to Internet Relay Chat (IRC). Before you can sign on to IRC, you have to configure it first. Choose Settings, Network, and scroll down to IRC Settings, as shown in Figure 9.22.

i;- lulling

n/j ■iiiiii',

Litilil i

Uiuwui id

FIGURE 9.22 Changing the IRC server and username settings.

Editing the fields in the Settings menus is a little strange, but when you get used to it, you will appreciate the speed with which you can "type" with the controller. Figure 9.23 shows the KB1 TP input system used to edit the Nickname field. You can toggle the input system on and off using the "White button on your controller. You use the left analog stick to move from one group of letters to another, and the right analog stick to choose one of the four letters



-

IE 9,24 The IRC Client built into Avalaunch.

You can configure the Telnet server to connect to by using the Settings, Network, Telnet Settings screen, shown in Figure 9.26.

## Settings

The Settings screen in Avalaunch is rather complex with a large number of submenus and informational screens (which means you will love it, right?). Lets explore each part of the Settings.

196

## CHAPTER 9 Avalaunch Dashboard

```
lll »T..';i.. |
l!J MinliMi
i I;' ■:t'l|M
1 'Mfi !
Jllil.; :l
> > ilij ill
■1
```

FIGURE 9,25 The Telnet client built into Avalaunch.



i i > i Ml

CICURE 9.2\* The Telnet Settings screen.

## Network

The first Settings screen, Network, shows information about the network connection (see Figure 9.27). As you can see, there are several subscreens for IP, FTP, IRC, and other settings.

You can use the D-pacl to navigate from the items in each Settings

screen and back to the tabbed list of subitems in each Settings screen. From the IP Settings screen, you can edit almost every

197

aspect of your Xbox's network configuration, from the IP address to the DHCP connection. As you can see, Avalaunch can even connect to an SNTP server to keep the system time up-to-date.

iluiViu'iit •■iiWif.

i n.iufl : n

'lit'.I' J||-||;I

III " I L'J/J

Flf-' ».il|lir.l ■,,, , | .-. •..;, ,

lie; niMhl ;, 'TtM'H "i'j • , ",. ■•

•Jul.; I

f>Hifil • ifllii u

'''

i hi, nil'

Ull.HilU III ['.111 |[ I'I

\'rr. I'nl '■ "

.'11-. «iilki|i ;i" ■ -J1 i mil'

tiinii mt.iu lilfp uLtlUluU ;iji;'i!" : Uimjj,}

, I! -"Iftrf | I I

FIGURE 9,27 The Network IP Settings screen.



On the FTP Settings screen, you can change the options for the FTP server built into Avalaunch, as shown in Figure 9.28.

«V

::-ii

nii.,,i.) i. ■■■■Jim. i, 'i'

.,,l(„i.,-.,;.. -M. ;

iMKJILJIM'tljJ '

; i;- ,ui.,m

lit! -Htr

iIn! i I

fiiliiill inl|iii;tj

FIGURE 9.28 The Network FTP Settings screen.

You can also explore other options in the Network settings screen, but I want to jump down to the Download options. As you can see in Figure 9.29, you can download frequently used

198

## CHAPTER \* AvalauncU Dashboard

programs directly from within Avalaunch (without having to transfer these programs to the Xbox from your PC).

wn\ gi

■

IT HI

Pr<hIU|i ..1 i'l

Hyjlyj l'W  
M/U illfi;ij  
!i" lllllt fIM  
ijji ; i  
f-jlil i! h lllii ;j

A

FIGURE 9.29 The list of downloads available.

Main Options

The Main Options screen, shown in Figure 9.30, contains a lot of tabs for the main options. The first tab is AV Settings, from which you can view and change the audio/video settings used by Avalaunch, and which affect the basic operation of your Xbox, as these settings are written to the EEPROM. From here, you can toggle options such as widescreen display, 1080i support, DTS, and so on.

Be very careful when making any changes to the system with this menu. You can very easily screw up your Xbox by saving incorrect settings to the EEPROM and render your Xbox unusable! It is best to leave this menu alone unless you really know what you are doing.

The next tab, Hardware Info, is shown in Figure 9.31. This screen provides a lot of useful information, such as the Xbox serial number, kernel version, and other interesting details (none of which are editable).

The Misc Info screen, shown in Figure 9.32, displays status information about your Xbox as well as some additional hardware details, such as the IDE devices and temperature. This screen also includes a very nice graphical, historical display of the system temperature.

hi ■ill.l'll'. «IP > J 111, ■ I \* 1 ■ ■. i» -li>.'. m' ||Im  
iM.fl || ijjl.n in-Mfii II , 'iu rill ii| ' '

i i';, 111 u r I m M u\'\' [{[\*}

iii'H- = ■• »'jl(ii fy\l' ■ u i'ii i'iJ

H.fH.mmIiiih f f JllllJ tl'vWiUW

iVllmlillM V'Tii.ii.i ,n FjjjaUliUl

IlLnrJiilJL l mil J l;m '■"■ ' W-wlil&ll

EJmil ii|illuu;

fi IMl'lj -Mt iJ liU 1 Hll CI i'l ' ,«, I : liiiiiiiliil .,l< iir. HI. i'il-i-i  
iLlniiUlltl . MUMfJ'l

[I ii nil H . HHi < ; ijlj lllllJl

llUJlutu ; I J Mllllfi

I-I Ij I

FIGURE 9-30 The Main Options screen has a multitabbed display.

¥n■! , ■ r 1 il iiuiibui "'■" 11" i ' "■ 1 1 It •» ' T'lni'.

IlHfiiyillliini. i '!' > | |f i

DM lil".m<lpr 1 1 'TJ UlU lll'l | ! | 1 M.

ℳℳiℳℳ, if .(in till ■ i'-1 1

i■i.Tℳ. (i'ii.

ℳℳi ℳ|iiiiiu,i

ℳℳf IU'ℳ, i■ : nuy

ll.li'l.i.ii'i , Ji ll'li : \*> .-1 1 Ij

. 11 ii iii'in UbsUitui

' i 'J I-.' , I

■"

FIGURE 9.31 The Hardware Info screen.

The Harddisk Tools screen, shown in Figure 9.33, includes options that let you lock or unlock the drive, and toggle support for the F and G partitions. One interesting thing about this screen is that it displays the hard drive lock key (or password), which is a very important piece of information. Without the valid key, your Xbox

will not use the hard drive. The Xenium O/S will automatically read the old key and use it to lock the new hard drive when you perform a drive upgrade.

200

## CHAPTER 9 Avalaunch Dashboard

.

IrlIitHili'iu W l in

[IfLI, fiMilfllliil • (tilt)

. .,, , I. ell null UtUn 'HI J- .

"J Nil i.\ Mil. .1 l Mir 1)1 lijUjlU

;!"i ■\* lulu ifjj] i, !.i t«j| ;-n i \U\* + &m

II mlilhl ly.jjj

iM ■■""i in.

"I MIL! . ' If i.

|| IW I ll|lr. ||/U ■ !![" I

■.:■"■ [i|jii(»h iim ■-- ' ! i i .



Ii h', i

FIGURE 9,3/ The Misc Info screen.

.-J!

■i'i;"-. ,i,l

.. I • (jug ipi-i m||,; i . .-.-. ;|.tl I, ,,( „] il iclill.l.l'i'l Itlinujllusl

IMHlJrlll III!', ,,,,,, ; < ,Jt| ,| Ml, ,, ,|

IMJ-. ' li.J.i '!', ■■■ i, iMM-l

In. | Ml III I !

■

FIGURE 9.33 The Harddisk Tools screen.

The Boot Options screen, shown in Figure 9.34, displays information specific to Avalaunch that you can use to configure the Dash operation (such as Screensaver, auto-update, and so on).

The Games extras screen (not shown) displays options on any future game data downloads that will be available hou within Avalaunch.

Running Avalaunch

201

tin iJMi

upj

1 ■" :li" ■•■' iJlTiikuil

I'll : |-|IJ|ij^|l

. il Much llllu U[M|i|n J ri lllHil

' liuluim.i ■ i li iUu Itim Uii.iUliirl

M.ll.rlJiWirlliJu ,.Mi jii \\*i\ U »,!Nlilil

■31- tin it hi i niij lu'jijj UIj I'UiM

ll ...i.i ; ,,,,[ -';kjo i - in Hum. > .■ I'! 1/ M

thy "'lir i mii -m'm. , ll I'irrr. ' "i], | < ■ i»411j ll\*J li nri-M "I-I'm ||u

Jl'i. : I MUUAJ -j.I I'm-J

H'i':jrniM < iii"H]i' H ' U-k.. , Njiln [|i!||tjjUj 'i



FIGURE 9.34 The Boot Options screen.

## Skins

The Skin Settings screen, shown in Figure 9.35, displays options for changing the custom skin used by Avalaunch—and a lot of skins are available.

f\WCii

lu'. il pluitfi U UIJ liiaU il iilUfjiilliuU : iJlJ i'iI-iT

ltiij, iIi'-fijitldlmif j.ir!>' i [j.i i.ujiiii

ImiiiIniii— n .-il"! ■ rii ii < t'l'i- ■ jj -Mii" t -}\yt tyltuLJI -ii.iUllUJ

i i tftn fj| , ■ U iiiilmrll i| iljlnil ILimiiiM U\ itil-itl

, "H HLI|p, III 111! ll ;'H lijljul

1 1

FIGURE 9.35 The Skin Settings screen.

You can browse the local skins that have been downloaded already, or you can browse the skins available on several servers hosting Xbox skins, as shown in Figure 9.36.

202

## CHAPTER 9 Avalaunch Dashboard

uir..-mufti I^K'1'! nU' "' '

Limn' 'Hinl iJQjjun^b ititl J Eluil! 11 -If mli 1

ii -II

1 • n. !')-i !

FIGURE 9.36 The Online Skins screen.



I li 'in

illit luii Ilk iuuJli I urn i

v.'iH; -if fi'

FIGURE 9.38 The Background Music Settings screen.

Languages

The Languages Settings screen\* shown in Figure 9.39, lets you choose the language used for the text in Avalaunch.

7. yjqji

Mil

i^jjjiil

\A~\\\ ipi■ I ■ iiiijN

imOuinj I I.J "I

riiiM'jtih

!M Ulljl Nir'HUh iJjJLJl

hii i 'I ! f.'J I

FIGURE 939 The Language Settings screen.

204

CHAPTER

Avalaunch Dashboard

Quick star I

The Quickstart screen, shown in Figure 9.40, lets you configure some of the controller buttons as Quickstart commands so that if



you hold that particular button while AvaJaunch is first starting up, the associated XBE file is run. The Left Trigger, shown here, will automatically run the last

program that was run via Quickstart.

y™# >t i

-\\ \

rH

in [\n lit >,)» -.mill'm

'JMll'in

ItliM »'J

FIGURE 3.40 The Quickstart Settings screen.

About Avalaunch

The About Avalaunch option brings up a mostly blank screen that displays the Avalaunch version number and "Team Avalaunch."

Update Dashboard

The Update Dashboard option is perhaps the most interesting part of the settings in Avalaunch. This screen, shown in Figure 9.41, shows the version numbers of the components of Avalaunch currently installed, and whether an update is available (so an Internet connection is required here, obviously). You can select an item from the list if you wish to update that component with a newer version.

Reboot

The Reboot option will cause Avalaunch to reboot (to reload any changed settings, such as in one of the program menus) back to the main menu.

## Summary

205

## PiV

• ■ N'l m i til \\ \ | 'i I i I Dn | w | |  
' IIMll > i'MM-l !',, | | [ | "ih | | M | I.. f |  
IJIII |t | | j " | | > j | | Ih11 [J "\; \{  
l(l l I  
lfj l < i ' " U

FIGURE 9.41 The Update Dashboard screen.

## Shutdown

The Shutdown option will cause your Xbox to power down, as if you had pressed the front power button.

## Summary

This chapter presented you with an in-depth look at the versatile and fully featured Avalaunch Dash for Xbox. This powerful Dash lets you do just about everything you need to do with your Xbox from the GUI point of view, short of installing an alternative O/S (such as Linux).

## Xbox Media Center

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- Overview of Xbox Media Center
- installing Xbox Media Center
- Running Xbox Media Center

Xbox Media Center (XBMC) is a custom Dashboard for the Xbox that provides an attractive, easy-to-use interface for the playback of multimedia. It turns your Xbox into an entertainment center capable of playing audio and video files of various formats through your TV and stereo system. As a Dashboard, Xbox Media Center is best installed as a launch item so it will start up automatically when the Xbox is turned on. This chapter will explore most of the features that make Xbox Media Center a well-rounded, indispensable, cutting-edge Dashboard.

## Overview of Xbox Media Center

One might argue that it is always wise to save the best for last. When it comes to Xbox Dashboards, Xbox Media Center is in a class all by itself. I wouldn't say that Xbox Media Center is better than either EvoX or Avalaunch, but it is certainly loaded with a feature set that draws a compelling argument in its favor. When you look at some of the features put into these Dashboards, it is really extraordinary how the developers have gone all out to make an excellent product. You can feel the dedication and, well, love for this hobby in every menu and in every nuance of the program.

Xbox Media Center (shown in Figure 10.1) is really just another program with an . xbe extension, as is the case with

## 208 Xbox Media Center

EvoX and Avalaunch (which were covered in the preceding two chapters). To call these programs "Dashboards" simply means that they are the front-end GUIs that are used most often and are as such, for all practical purposes, the O/S. In Xbox terms, the Dashboard is the O/S because it allows you to run programs stored in the system, which is the primary goal of an O/S.

ifcoswyijAP

My Programs My files

MvMMtfc NtyVkJm

## Settings

FIGURE 10.1 The main menu of Xbox Media Center.

Xbox Media Center is designed to do many of the things that EvoX and Avalaunch can do, but is tailored for media file playback, with built-in support for numerous video codecs (such as Divx and Xvid). XBMC was designed to be easy to use, with a simple interface that can be controlled with the Xbox DVD remote control (however, a controller will still work).

The home for Xbox Media Center is <http://www.xboxmediacenter.com>, where you can go to read the user manual, among other things.

### Installing Xbox Media Center

You install XBMC using the same process you used to install EvoX and Avalaunch. Basically, you hack a BIOS so that it will run the appropriate XBE file that you will install on the hard drive. You then use the mod chip's O/S to add the BIOS file as a launch item (or as the sole BIOS if your mod chip supports only a single BIOS bank), thus allowing you to configure the Dashboard as the default start item when you turn on the Xbox. Imagine running XBMC in your Xbox, which is connected to your entertainment center and big-screen TV; now you're starting to get the idea!

XBMC is in the same boat with EvoX and Avalaunch as far as availability. You'll need to search Xbox fan sites and BitTorrent sites for an XBMC torrent file to acquire XBMC. You will also need a BIOS file that will work with XBtool, such as EvoX M7 (or the M8 if you have an Xbox 1.6).

### Installing the XBMC Files

Xbox Media Center has a configuration file called `XboxMediaCenter.xml` that must be modified for XBMC to launch as a Dashboard. Take a look at the top of the configuration file (it is

best to edit this file with a simple text editor such as Notepad):

```
<xboxmediacenter>
```

```
<!-- When using XBMC as dashboard, define home directory here !  
--> <!-- and move the XBMC xbe plus this xml config file to C:\ ! --  
> <!-- Example: <home> E:\Apps\XBMC\ </home> ! ->
```

```
<home> - </home>
```

I would like to install XBMC to E: \APPS\XBMC and launch it from there (so it will be available as a launchable Dashboard as well as an application that can be run from any other Dashboard), so T will simply edit the home setting in the config file to look like this:

```
<home> E:\APPS\XBMC\ </home>
```

That will get the job done! If you don't edit the XboxMediaCenter.xml configuration file, it simply won't run from the subfolder (and I wouldn't advise installing XJBMC on the root because it has many subfolders that will clutter your root partition).

The default.xbe and XboxMediaCenter.xml files rttUSt be in the root folder if you want to. run XBMC as a Dashboard. Therefore, you will want to rename default.xbe to xbmc. xbe so it won't conflict with any other programs in the root. XBMC expects the XML file to reside in the same folder as the XBE file, but all other files are referenced from the home setting.

Copy the XBMC folder to E: \APPS, retaining the default, xbe and XboxMediaCenter.xml files within the XBMC folder. You will then be able to run XBMC from another Dashboard, and you will then place a copy of the renamed xbmc. xbe and config file in C: \ so it is launchable as a Dashboard. Whew, confused yet? If all else fails, you can always just run XBMC from EvoX or Avalaunch as a regular application.

#### NOTE

XBMC will run fine from any folder with the default XboxMediaCenter.xml configuration file untouched. You need to modify it only when you want to run XBMC as a Dashboard.

## Installing a Hacked BIOS

To get things rolling with XBMC, you'll need to hack another BIOS file and then install it in the Xenium O/S (or whatever mod chip you are using, to be fair; please understand that I don't have the time or space to cater to every mod chip, so substitute "Xenium" with whatever mod chip you are using).

210

### Xfaox Media Center

Because I have covered this process twice already, I refer you to the preceding two chapters for step-by-step instructions (with figures) on how to add an item to the Launch menu. That way, I can skim over it in this chapter. (For specifics, refer to "Adding Avalaunch to the Xenium O/S Launch Menu" in Chapter 9 > "Avalaunch Dashboard").

You will want to use XBtool again to modify your favorite BIOS file, specifying that it should execute a certain XBE file on the hard drive—which will be C: \xbmc.xbe in this case. Figure 10.2 shows XBtool with the changes made to an EvoX M7 BIOS file (which I find to be a good customizable BIOS to use, but again, you can use whatever BIOS you wish).

!\*,

HB + O

y. w

X Lip Height\*

Lo < v],;.J :■;[■ ■■,■ 17.hr,

Copy f.tLH tG Oipoosd

D\*

Ir- -W«fc

I H

1 ■•'

[rvdijbor-iArrMi.ro.^LOl.ijl)

KCSNftS: : .[ > 0;> ArW137D-{7'l7^r/VOV,..lci QH&

ftjftiti Pmm led Cnivi

i An" i ■'■ -, -' 1 Lu^-i r R\*d

v Mfttt\*^< J«k r Ei-nri:."i ff 'iow

T~" Embed Ecproni

toot Partite\* \*ncf tiecytatiK l 5 f~'-= or. b\*

BlQSTVni

|Multi

l~

ffft&Srgts

r .

it F

fr

■"

1 -\ I

, ;,,,"

Resets

■ly lrrr.til.\_ ,

1

i Enibed HD hrr

157 LBM8Si\*p:rtt and Default Pa tltion fifcfil Opfloi \*

[PbiliHoru:. TiTsupt- l"7 T Ir/^HMdOnvvF1^

KCi7T#« Re\*

F. • ■

r 5111

■ 10M!

JP^J.

∴« Il\_

FIGURE 10.2 Modding a BIOS file with XBtool to auto-launch Xbox Media Center.

When you have a BIOS file to use, you'll need to copy it over to your Xbox using SMB or FTP. Be sure to copy the Xbox Media Center files to E:\APPS\XBMC and make sure default\_xbe exists in that folder so it will run! Of course, feel free to change this folder name if you wish, as long as it matches what you specified in the BIOS file. If you don't ever plan to run XBMC from another Dashboard, you can go ahead and put it in C:\XBMC.

After you have copied XBMC to the Xbox hard drive, including the hacked BIOS file (which I called XBMC\_M7.bin for easy reference), you can fire up the Xenium O/S and enter the Launch menu, as shown in Figure 10.3.

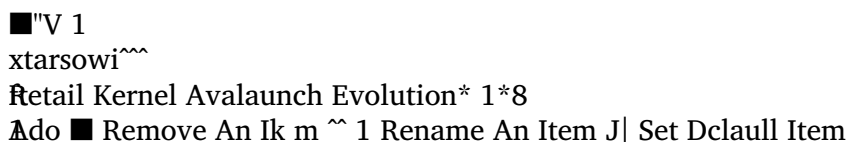
Because I have covered this procedure so many times before, I'll skim over the details this time and simply explain what to do. If you have any difficulty, refer to the preceding two chapters for

21 1

more detailed instructions on installing a new item on the Xenium O/S Launch menu. If you are using a different mod chip, you will need to refer to the documentation for that mod chip on how to install a BIOS image. If you are using a mod chip with just a single BIOS (and no room for multiple BIOS images), I strongly suggest you not install this hacked BIOS file for running XBMC; you may want to install EvoX or Avalaunch instead and then open XBMC as an application from within one of those Dashboards. Refer to the



website for your mod chip manufacturer for instructions on how to use the mod chip, how to configure the BIOS, and so on.



The screenshot shows a menu with the following options: "V 1", "xtarsowi^^", "Retail Kernel Avalaunch Evolution\* 1\*8", and "Add A New Item". The "Add A New Item" option is highlighted with a blue bar.

FIGURE 103 Adding a new item to the Launch menu.

Select Add A New Item from the menu, select Flash, and then browse for the XBMC\_M7. bin file (or whatever BIOS file you are going to use). After you select the BIOS file, you can enter a name for the launch item and choose a custom color for the programmable LED; then the Xenium O/S will copy the binary image into flash memory. After you have added the new launch item for XBMC, your Launch menu should look something like Figure 10.4.

You can now run XBMC from the Launch menu. If you plan to use XBMC as your main Dashboard, you may want to set it as the default launch item at this time.

## Running Xbox Media Center

XBMC was designed to be operated with the Xbox DVD remote control. All of the menus work with the controller D-pad, which the remote control's arrow buttons simulate. You access each menu with the Select button on the remote and exit with the Back button.

## 212 10 Xbox Media Center



The screenshot shows a menu with the following options: "rnrsxum", "Retail Kernel Avalaunch Evoluho", and "X M8 XBMC". The "X M8 XBMC" option is highlighted with a blue bar.

Add A New Item Remove An Item Rename An Item

FIGURE 10,4 XBMC has been added to the Launch menu.

## The Main Menu

The following seven items appear in the XBMC main menu:

- My Programs
- My Files
- My Pictures
- My Music
- My Videos
- Weather
- Settings

I will go over each of these menu items and the services they provide in the following sections.

### My Programs

Selecting My Programs from the main menu will bring up the My Programs screen, as shown in Figure 10.5.

By default, My Programs displays only the programs that it finds on the root of any partition. It would be best to create a shortcut to programs you use frequently, but that is not very realistic in a dynamic system like your Xbox. You will want to go into the Settings screen under My Programs to change a few settings so that you will be able to browse the entire file system rather than just the root. Figure 10.6 shows the Settings, My Programs screen.



My Programs is actually a file system browser.



FIGURE 10.6 The settings for My Programs.

I have disabled all of the options in this screen so that all files are displayed in the My Programs screen. Returning to My Programs from the main menu, you can now select a drive partition to see a complete list of files and folders, as shown in Figure 10.7.

You can change the view from List to Icons to Big Icons to change the way files are displayed. When you're using the remote control, it is probably easiest to use icons because you will probably not be sitting close enough to the TV screen to read the small text in the simple list. Selecting

a folder from this screen will browse into that folder, and selecting a program (denoted with an icon) will run the program (see Figure 10.8).



FIGURE 10.7 Browsing the file system in the My Programs screen.

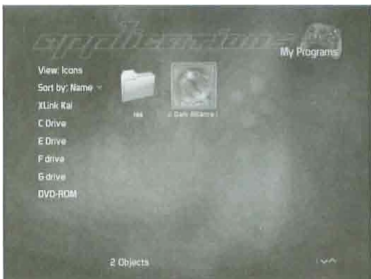


FIGURE 10,8 Running a program from the My Programs screen.

In most cases, you will have to reboot your Xbox to return to XBMC, which defeats the purpose of XBMC—operating as a media center (connected to your TV and stereo system). However, this does give XBMC the flexibility of being able to function like a regular Dashboard at the same time.

215

## My Files

The My Files screen might at first seem to be a duplicate of the My Programs file browser, but it also allows you to browse the network shares on your LAN (see Figure 10.9).

My Titei: SUtnce

Wp, 1695 Sort by; Nam\* \* Sfcjpf  
1JN  
\*f%■■■\*^P>

ton\*  
•WP" ♦f̂ir  
11 Ob)ocb

Browsing for files on the LAN is as easy as selecting the **WORKGROUPS** item in My Files, as shown in Figure 10.10.



## CHAPTER I Xbox Media Center

Selecting this item brings up a list of workgroups found on the LAN, such as the HARBOUR workgroup shown in Figure 10.11. Selecting the icon will open the workgroup browser, allowing you to see network shares.

FIGURE 10., 1 1 Browsing the local workgroups on the network.

On the next screen, you see the computers found within that workgroup, as shown in Figure 10.12. Selecting a computer name will open the shares for that computer.

4»  
My FiH"\* Sitae\*  
WmfaMra  
Son by: Date  
Scripts  
Wmm  
i

FIGURE 10.12 The computers in the chosen workgroup.

217

You can also browse files on the local Xbox hard drive. Figure 10.13 shows some files on the F partition, You can select a file by pressing Y to bring up options on the left side, where you can delete, rename, copy, or move the file. So, as you can see, XBMC does have rudimentary file management support built in.



FIGURE 10.13 Selecting a file brings up more options.

### My Pictures

One of the least conspicuous but perhaps most useful features of XBMC is the photo browser, available in the My Pictures screen (shown in Figure 10.14).

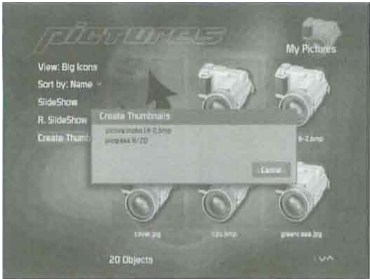
«V PWu\*



FIGURE 10\*16 The default display will show thumbnails after you create them.

When you select Create Thumbs, all of the image files in the current folder are opened and thumbnails are generated (see Figure 10.17).

219



Generating thumbnails of the image files in the current folder.

If you have a lot of thumbnails, you may want to change the display to Icons (rather than Big Icons, which takes up a lot of screen space), as shown in Figure 10.18.

MvPfctwK  
Vm\*t kant 5of[by:Kimo • SlftStott RSUdoSta\* CfMtn Thutflbi  
IMQIP-IJR\* fW»ft}|&<?\*r» ItmelfrffMm ^IMflBti  
EDPt<j«rta

FIGURE 10\*18 Viewing the thumbnails of pictures in the current folder.

Selecting a thumbnail will display the full image on the screen (see Figure 10.19). You can then use cite Select button to zoom in on the image. Remember thatXBMC was designed to work with the remote, so you use the Select and Back buttons to navigate (just remember that when you get frustrated over the B button not working the way you expect).





FIGURE 10.19 Displaying a photo on the screen.

The Slideshow and Reverse Slideshow are very nice features, especially if you want to peruse your digital photo collection on a big-screen TV! Not only does the slideshow display all of the photos in a given folder, but it also presents them with interesting screen transitions.

If you want to change the time that each picture is displayed and the speed of the transition, you can change these values from the My Pictures Settings screen (in the Settings menu), as shown in Figure 10.20.



FIGURE 10.20 Changing the settings of the picture viewer.

Figure 10.21 shows the My Music screen.

## Browsing Your Music Library

Although you can use a network share (SMB or SAMBA) for music playback, I recommend copying your music library to the Xbox so it does not depend on a PC on the LAN for media. It's better to keep the Xbox self-contained as a media center, but, of course, that's your choice.

### NOTE

The Xbox file system seems to be able to handle filenames of up to 42 characters and no more (including the extension). It is pretty common for MP3 filenames to be long because they include the track, artist, album, and song name (at least, that is how I rip my CDs). You will need to shorten the filenames if they exceed 42 characters; otherwise, you will not be able to copy the files to your Xbox.

MV% < J  
#5 Withon and Sortbtftan\* i Switch view PiavIUUj  
Sortch 5cm  
0nwmmmm  
teotijKti

FIGURE 10.21 Browsing for music files in My Music.

Figure 10.22 shows the My Music screen with an open folder containing MP3 files. The files shown are not the filenames, but rather the data stored in each MP3 file about the songs.

## Listening to Audio CDs

If you want to just listen to a regular audio CD with XBMC, you can insert a CD into the drive, and XBMC will download the CD information (CDDb) to display the artist, album, and track names on the screen. Once XBMC has looked up one of your CDs online, it will store the CDDb

## Xhox Media Center

locally so it won't have to perform another online search. XBMC will automatically start playing an audio CD, but you can also start playback manually by going into My Music and browsing to the DVD-ROM drive (see Figure 10.23). If an audio CD is in the drive, XBMC will read the CD information from CDDb and display the tracks, which you can then play.

Mu IWimi  
VHHt.Uflt  
HlunmyN.nffKiri  
SpitGwimJ rW  
HlunmyMi  
HlunmyHapi/' P\* =rl»  
SawFortif iftlMV  
... arU  
Hlunmy\*.\*\*\*  
HlunmyH  
► in?  
HlunmyHfcai

FIGURE 1 0.22 Viewing a list of MP3 files.

wvS  
Vim: Ust  
931 byiWanw Smite n ute«  
4DI  
413  
WdD Ch  
36w  
iI17h  
1m tfmtmt mitti\*n  
Et \* n\*\*m  
ISQDjOCfi

FIGURE t(K23 Listening to an audio CD.

## Ripping Audio CDs

When you select the DVD-ROM drive to piny an audio CD, you will see the list of songs available on the CD. From the My Music song listing (make sure the view is set to Songs using the Switch View option), you will see an option called Rip CD on the left-side menu. This option will convert the tracks of the CD to MP3, as shown in Figure 10.24. Because you have no control over the MP3 settings, you may want to do this on your PC instead and transfer the MP3 files to your Xbox. However, this very convenient feature produces 192Kbps-encoded MP3 files. I personally prefer 320Kbps CBR for the highest possible quality, although some audiophiles might argue that 192 is plenty. It's up to you!

MybfeWC  
 Ule\*:UBi  
 MBt by: torn.  
 90Mch vlffw  
 34G  
 4128ims  
 830ch  
 50dn  
 ear!  
 WpU)  
 timi Tli ro fifty THH forty fl«i \* ± »w"  
 155mmiAi1k  
 1147m (itv - a\*« u\* a mmax  
 f30b)tdi

FIGURE 10.24 Ripping an audio CD to the Xbox hard drive.

## My Music Settings

You can configure the M) Music settings from the Settings menu, as shown in Figure 10.25. Here, you will find many options on how music is played, including options for the visualization.

## Visualizations

At any time while music is being played by XBMC, you can open the Visualization screen by pressing X. The visualization you selected in the My Music Settings screen will fill the screen with an interesting display that is synchronized with the music (see Figure 10.26). The visualizations are actually written with script rather than being compiled into XBMC, so you can modify the visualizations and create your own if you wish.

224

CHAPTER 10 Xbox Media Center

Music  
Visualizations [3/  
i ■  
•  
Screen ihi muic (fttibaM  
Set to a attwnfrfo  
Visual COOS Info  
► i  
M

FIGURE 10.25 The My Music Settings screen.

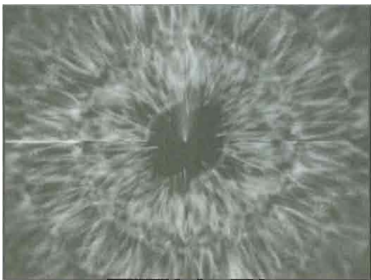


FIGURE 10\*26 Visualizations play in sync with the music.

My Videos

The video support in XBMC is very strong, with built-in codecs for playing XVTd, DIVX, MPEG2, and WMV9 files. To help manage your movie collection, XBMC can connect online to the Internet

Movie Database (IMDb), which has a huge catalog of movies, with details such as genre, title, release date, and cast; it even provides thumbnail images. Because XBMC is a media center to be used in conjunction with a big-screen TV and audio system, its video support allows

225

you to convert your Xbox into a home video server. Can't find that tape of your friend doing a nosedive at the skate park? Next time, convert it to an MPEG2 and keep it stored in your Xbox for safekeeping. XBMC can play videos on an SMB network share as well, so if your hard drive runs out of space, you can use a network storage device (or your PC) to handle the overflow and stream videos over the network for playback in XBMC.

Let's start by selecting My Videos from the main menu, as shown in Figure 10.27.

MyFta  
AM' • My tffcfa. Mtati  
#

FIGURE 10.27 Opening the My Videos browser screen.

Selecting this option will bring up the My Videos browser that you can use to locate your videos, either on the local hard drive or on a network share. I have a collection of videos stored on the F drive, as shown in Figure 10.28.

Playing a video is as simple as selecting it from the video file browser, which will bring up the video player shown in Figure 10.29.

### The On Screen Display (OSD)

While video is playing, you can press the Select button to pause or resume playback. The Y button (Menu on the DVD remote) brings up the On-Screen Display (OSD), showing some playback options at your disposal. Figure 10.30 shows the video settings.

Because there are so many options to the video playback, I won't get into all of them; instead, I'll let you explore the complete feature-set of XBMC (after all, it is an open source product, meaning it is never i'fdWy flnisJied). You can create bookmarks within a video so that you can quickly jump to that point in the video without fast forwarding or rewinding, as shown in Figure 10.31.

226

10 Xbox Media Center

>j  
MyVKfeaa  
uifRWffpiiDrt»??\_iaflff<ivl  
Satpjbvt.Hrrnua  
\$577chBaE«iifi LaOllJlM  
P%ByQVR  
2252MB«(r\*«li Lefl  
BQM  
M00e  
M9 MB \*JM\*  
ID9MB  
4S0b}^li

FIGURE 10\*28 Locating videos on the Xbox hard drive is as easy as pointing and clicking.



FIGURE 10,29 The Xbox Media Center video player supports a wide variety of video formats.

Weather

The Weather screen is a nice option that rounds out this great Dashboard. You need to configure the Weather settings so that this screen reflects your part of the world. You can use an international region code or a ZIP code for your city to see the current weather forecast for your area. Figure 10.32 shows The Weather Channel on your Xbox, with data provided by

<http://www.weather.com>.



FIGURE 10-30 You can modify the video settings during playback.

T <.: Ijii !ti!  
 - --- " T "  
 ^..H?M.\*KI- IVi4M»^\*  
 ^..r...v... Jj)-\*  
 Clw f track marks  
 10 (^ o© oo\g  
 ro®ooj

FIGURE 10.31 You can modify the video settings during playback.

To set your local area, select Settings, Weather to configure up to three locales that you wish to see in the Weather screen. Using the Search option next to each locale (shown in Figure 10.33), you are given a virtual keyboard with which to enter a search value.

You can search by ZIP code, city name, or international code. Type in the name of the city in which you live using the virtual keyboard, as shown in Figure 10.34.



228 Xfaox Media Center

Rifrtah Indianapolis

9/23/04 653 PM EST

Temp 6°F «

FMbLUf» 65 F

Q#n PcHrit d3 F

HumltMy 50%

UV Ends« n Lou

ttlwtw From ENE ai 5 mph

FIGURE 10.32 You can view the current weather forecast for your local area.

W#a|h\*\*i  
Refresh WMe  
Twnpintufi \M\ a  
S\*\*\*d Unii  
"NorarJ <  
Siteft  
9610716»

FIGURE 10.33 You can enter a search value to change the locale.

Typing phoenix into the search field brings up a list of matches from the weather database at <http://www.weather.com> (see Figure 10.35). You can scroll through the list to find the city you are looking for.

When you select one of the locations, it is entered into that position (of which there are three in XBMC). You can then return to the main menu and open the Weather screen to view the new locations you have selected (see Figure 10.36).



RGUR£ 10,34 Typing in the search criteria for a locale.

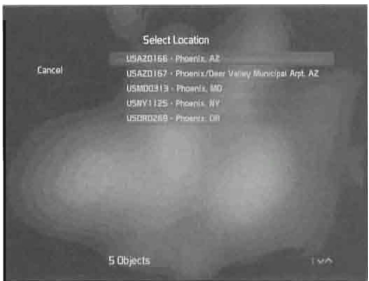


FIGURE 10,35 The search criteria resulted in a list of matches.

### Settings

At this point, I believe you have seen enough of the options in X.BMC to make your way through the Setting screen without requiring an overview of it. The Settings screen (shown in Figure 10.37) includes many options for customizing the functionality of XBMC, so I encourage you to browse each of the configuration pages within the Settings screen to see whether there are any options that you would like to use to personalize XBMC for your needs.

9/WM4;S3PJfIM5T

Temp AST m

FmJs Uk\* B9 F

top Point 3BF

HuNdltV 13%

UUIndw tUm

Wind Prom W5W n D m^t

Wodtwsdirv Ttutrcw»v

CURE 1036 Viewing the weather forecast for the newly selected location.

Sellings

r\* »

MseVidkerface

MydMundiona

SftyJPK\info\$

MydPKBAMcn

\*\*■■■■■

The Settings screen is the place where you go to fully customize XBMC.

Summary

This chapter provided a complete overview of Xbox Media Center as both an application and installable Dashboard that can be booted up when the Xbox power is turned on. XBMC is a powerful media playback application that excels at playing numerous types of audio and video files. In addition, XBMC comes with a digital photo viewer with thumbnail and slideshow features.

PART IV

## Major Hardware Mods

### CHAPTER 11 Replacing the Xbox Case

### CHAPTER 12 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive

### CHAPTER 13 Lighting Up the Case

### CHAPTER 14 Cooling Down Your Xbox

### APPENDIX A Xbox Resources

## 11

### Replacing the Xbox Case

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- Swapping your case for a new one
- Swapping out to an after market case
- Creating a custom system jewel

This chapter gives you step-by-step instructions on how to replace your Xbox case with a new case, which might be a factory original, a special edition case, or even an aftermarket case. Why would you want to do this? Well, you would replace it if your Xbox case became damaged, obviously, but you can do some really fun things with a clear case, such as adding LEDs and cold cathode light kits to make your Xbox more fun.

### Stock Cases

In the following sections, I'm going to show you how to replace your Xbox case with another stock case. You can find replacement cases on eBay as well as on Xbox fan sites and aftermarket reseller sites on the Web. You might want to replace your Xbox case just for cosmetic reasons, which was certainly my goal. It is a lot of fun to add LEDs and cold cathode light kits to your Xbox to liven up a

LAN party!

After you have completely torn down your old Xbox, you can proceed with the following instructions that will explain how to remove the rest of the parts in your Xbox and install them in the new case. You do not need to remove the motherboard to install an aftermarket clear case, because these are usually just a front panel and top cover.

234

## CHAPTER 11 Replacing the Xbox Case

You will need to remove the motherboard, of course, which is held down with 11 screws (10 for revision 1.6 Xboxes), as well as the power supply. If you're lucky, your new case already has the metal inner lining. If it does not, you will have to remove the metal lining (which helps with cooling but is primarily there to prevent electromagnetic interference either coming from the Xbox or entering into the Xbox from other sources).

Here, you will learn to take your stock Xbox (see Figure 11.1) and transplant its components into another stock case (see Figure 11.2). I am using the Halo Special Edition case to make this procedure more interesting. The Halo case is translucent, so it's a great choice for your modified Xbox.



FIGURE 11-1 A typical stock Xbox case.

### Tearing Down the Old Case

You can refer to Chapter 2, "Disassembling Your Xbox," for complete instructions on how to open the case and completely disassemble your Xbox, all the way down to removing the motherboard. I'll go over the basic procedure here, but you'll want to flip back to Chapter 2 for details if you get stuck at any point of taking apart your Xbox.

### Quick Disassembly

Figure 11.3 shows the bottom of the stock case with the rubber pads removed. Six Torx screws must be removed (two of which are behind labels).



The new case that will replace the original case.



FIGURE 1 1.3 The bottom of the stock case.

Figure 11.4 shows the back of the stock Xbox. After you have removed the six screws, you can just lift the case upward. If it seems stuck, you can use a small screwdriver at the bottom of each side to pry it up, after which the case cover should lift off easily.

## Replacing the Xbox Case



FIGURE I 1,4 The case cover lifts off after the screws have been removed.

Figure ] 1.5 shows the inside of the stock Xbox after the case cover has been removed. You must remove three more small screws, and then you can lift out the hard drive and DVD-ROM drive, unplugging the IDE and power cables as you do so.

71

8A1>.\*^X\*\*

0

You have gained access inside the Xbox.

You don t need to remove the hard drive and DVD-ROM drive from their plastic frames because the frames will just be installed into the new case. For now, just remove all the cables and set the drives aside. You will then see the motherboard and power supply, as shown in Figure 11.6.

Next, remove the power cord, front button cable, controller cables, and fan cable from the motherboard. Remove the screws holding down the motherboard and lift it out. You end up with an empty case (for the most part), as shown in Figure 11.7.

Stock Cases 237

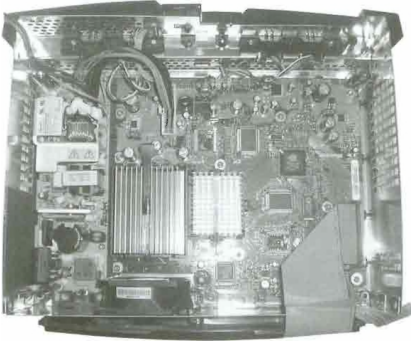


FIGURE I T.6 The "barebones" Xbox with the motherboard visible.

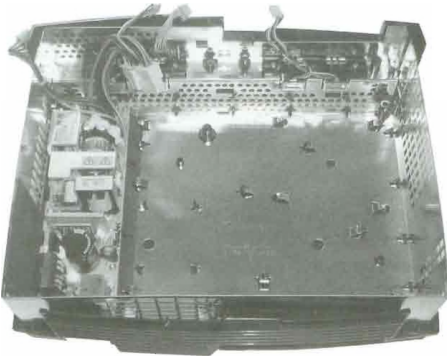


FIGURE 11.7 The case is mostly empty at this point.

238

## CHAPTER 1 1 Replacing the Xbox Case

### Removing the Controller Port Assemblies

Okay, now this is as far as we went in Chapter 2, so I'll show you how to remove the remaining few parts that you'll need to transplant into the new case. Figure 11.8 shows the controller ports 1 and 2 from the inside. Both ports share a connector on the motherboard. The controller port assemblies are held in place by two Tolx screws that must be removed.



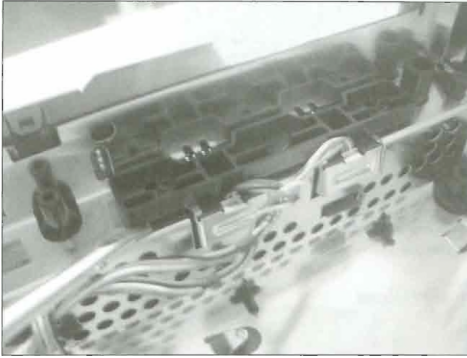


FIGURE I 1.8 Controller ports 1 and 2 share a connector.

After removing the mo screws, you can use a screwdriver to gently pry the controller ports from the front of the case, as shown in Figure 11.9. The assembly is pried more up and out rather than just straight back.

After you have loosened the controller ports, the entire controller assembly will come loose, leaving the ports empty (as shown in Figure 11.10). The assembly itself is shown in Figure 11.1 I. This will be installed into the new case.

### Removing the Power Supply

The power supply for the Xbox is located on the right side of the case next to the motherboard, as shown in Figure 11.12. This goes without saying, but please double-check that you have removed the power cord from your Xbox before you try to remove the power supply, okay? Let's not introduce any new candidates for the Darwin Awards (<http://www.darwinawards.com>) by electrocuting yourself. Always remove the power cord any time you open the case. And just to be safe, after you have removed the power cord, press the power or eject button on the front of the Xbox, which should drain the larger capacitors on the power supply unit. You can still get quite a shock if a capacitor is fully charged even after the power cord is removed.

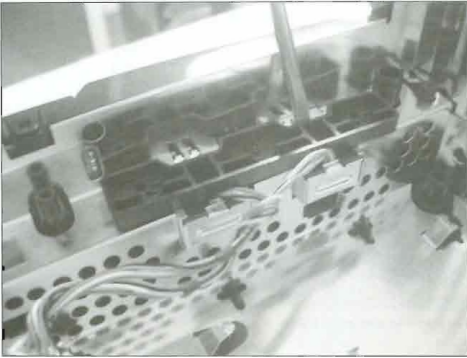


FIGURE I 1,9 The controller ports are gently pried away out of the case.

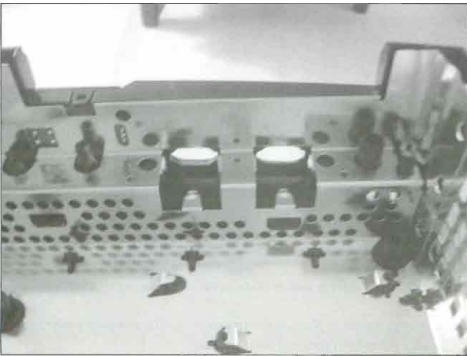


FIGURE 1 1,10 The controller port assembly has been removed.

## 240 Replacing the Xbox Case

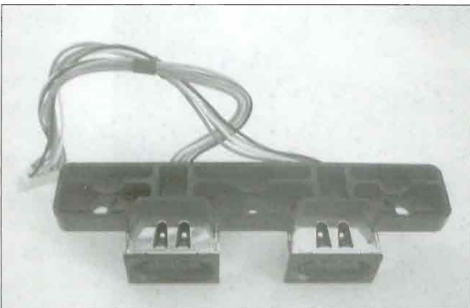


FIGURE 1 1.1 I The controller port assembly.

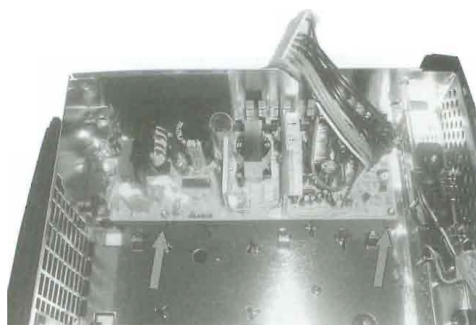


FIGURE II -12 The Xbox power supply is held in place by two Torx screws.

Two Torx screws hold the power supply in place, as the arrows show. The complete power supply is shown in Figure 11.13 after it has been removed from the case.

### Removing the Front Button Assembly

If you are doing a stock case swap, you may not need to remove the front button assembly from your old case because the new one very likely has the front power button and eject button, with

### Stock Cases

241

a connector ready to be plugged into the motherboard. But if you happen to have found a replacement case without the front buttons, you'll need to transplant them.



FIGURE 11.13 The Xbox power supply removed from the case.

The only way that I've been able to determine to remove the front button assembly is to remove the inner metal liner inside the Xbox case. There just doesn't seem to be any other way to get to the assembly, which is located behind the metal liner. Fortunately, you can just pull it out with a little tugging at each corner (see Figure 11.14).



FIGURE 11.14 The inner aluminum liner inside the Xbox case.

242

## Replacing the Xbox Case

Try not to warp or bend the aluminum as you pull on each corner to coerce it out of the case. Figure 11.15 shows the side of the case with the liner starting to come up.

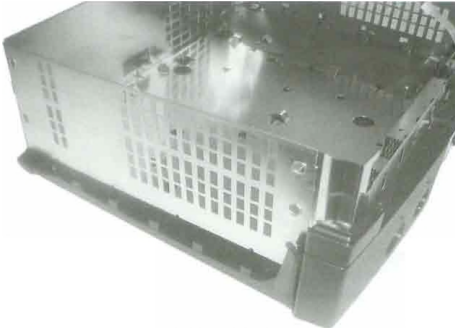


FIGURE 11.1 S The sides of the case liner are the best places to lift.

Small pegs on the bottom of the case hold down the aluminum liner, and three pegs on the inner side of the front panel also hold down the liner. Gently tug on the metal to pull it upward, little by little. You will want to pull at each corner, as shown in Figure 11.16, and lift the back side higher than the front side to clear the three pegs in the front that are holding the liner in position.

After the liner has been removed, your Xbox case will be down to just the bottom and front panel, with the power/eject button assembly still attached, as shown in Figure 11.17.

Now you are able to remove the front panel from the dwindling Xbox case. The front panel just snaps off, from a tab on each side and one in the middle (inside the case). Simply pull out on each end of the front panel to free it (see Figure 11.18).

When you have the front panel off, you can then gently lift a small tab above the eject button to remove the button assembly circuit board. Two tabs on top of the panel free the button cover, as shown in Figure 11.19.

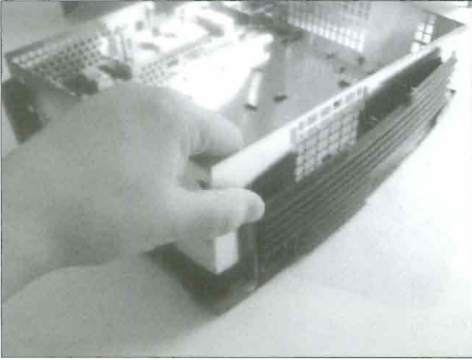


FIGURE 11,16 Lift out the liner by lifting the back side of the liner first.

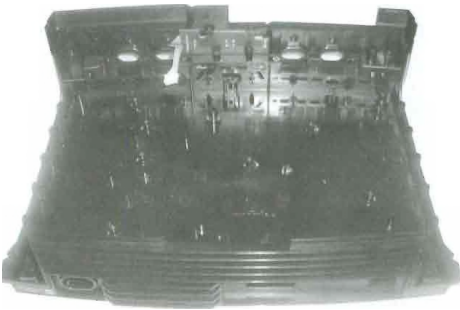


FIGURE 11,17 The case liner has been removed.

## 244 1 1 Replacing the Xbox Case



FIGURE IT-IS The front panel pops off easily.

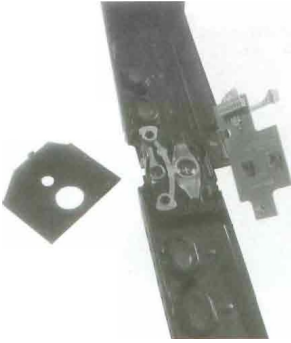


FIGURE 11 i19 Detaching the power button circuit board from the front panel.

## Stock Cases

245

## Replacing the DVD-ROM Tray Panel

If you are swapping to another black case, you can ignore this part. But more than likely you'll need to replace the DVD-ROM tray panel to match the new case. Removing the tray panel is a little tricky unless you know where to look. Starting with the DVD-ROM drive, shown in Figure 11.20, flip the drive over and look at the bottom of the front tray panel. Note that you should be sure to remove any media from the drive before working on it.



FIGURE t 1.20 The front tray panel on the DVD-ROM drive.

From that angle, you will be able to see a small slot on each side of the panel where you can insert a screwdriver to gently release the

panel with a side-to-side motion, as shown in Figure 11.21.

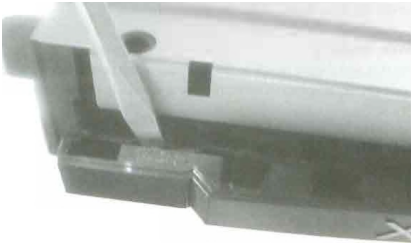


FIGURE 11\*21 Releasing the front tray panel with a screwdriver.

246

## CHAPTER I 1 Replacing the Xbox Case

The DVD-ROM front tray panel slides off after the two tabs have been raised, and you'll then be able to replace the panel with a new one to match your new case (see Figure 11.22).



FIGURE ! 1,22 The front tray panel has been removed.

### Assembling the New Case

Now you'll need to prepare the new case for the components of your Xbox. If you haven't done so already, remove the new case cover. Figure 11.23 shows the bottom of the new case.

If you had to reuse the front power and eject button assembly from your old case, insert them into the front panel of the new case. Next comes the aluminum case liner, if your new case doesn't already



have one. Insert the new liner by pressing it down into the case.

### Installing the Power Supply

The first major component that you should install in the new case is the power supply. Slide it into the right side of the case under the tabs and insert the two screws to hold down the power supply to the case, as shown in Figure 11.24.

### Installing the Controller Port Assemblies

After you have installed the power supply, next comes the two controller port assemblies, shown in Figure 11.25.



FIGURE 1 1.23 The bottom side of the Halo Special Edition case.

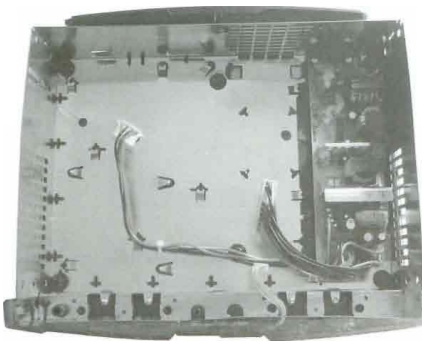


FIGURE 1 1.24 Installing the power supply in the new case.

Remember that two Torx screws hold the controller port assembly to the front case panel. Position the assembly as shown in Figure

11.26 and then install and tighten the two screws.



FIGURE 11.2! The two controller port assemblies.



FIGURE 1 1.26 Installing the right controller port assembly.

After you have installed both assemblies, your new case should look like Figure 11.27.

### Installing the Motherboard

Next comes the motherboard. Slide the motherboard into the case with the back side first so the LAN, video, and power cord ports are in position. Then lay the motherboard flat on the bottom of the case, as shown in Figure 11.28.

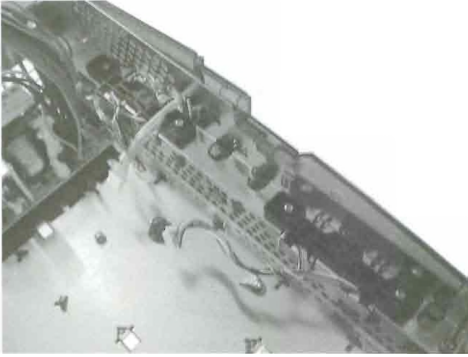


FIGURE I K27 Both controller port assemblies have been installed.

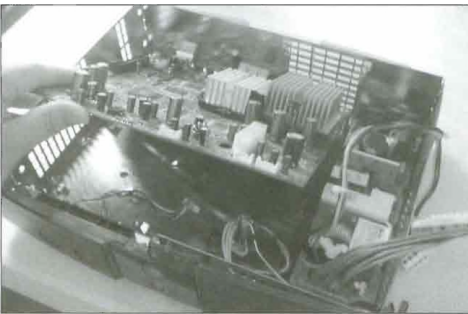


FIGURE I 1-28 Removing the motherboard from the case.

With the motherboard in place (see Figure 11.29), you have but to install the screws to hold down the motherboard (see Figure 11.30).

## 2 50 Replacing the Xbox Case

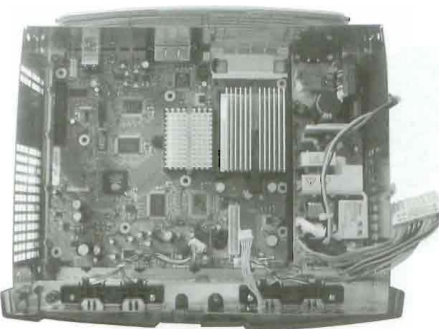


FIGURE 11,29 The motherboard has been positioned in the case.



FIGURE J130 Screwing down the motherboard.

## Stock Cases

251

### Installing the DVD ROM Tray Panel

You insert the DVD-ROM front tray panel onto the front of the DVD-ROM drive by sliding it down over the slots and tabs on the front of the tray, as shown in Figure 11.31.



FIGURE 1131 The new tray has been installed on the DVD-ROM drive.

### Finishing Touches

The only thing that remains to be done is to install the drives and replace the six case screws from the bottom to complete the Xbox case swap. The result is shown in Figure 11.32.



FIGURE 11.32 The case swap is finished.

252

## Replacing the Xbox Case

### Aftermarket Cases

The following sections are similar to the preceding ones in that I'll show you how to swap out your stock case for another, but here it will be an aftermarket case not originally available for the Xbox. The case I'm using in this example was purchased from HexCorp and is available on the Web at <http://www.customps2.com> (the name refers to this reseller's original PlayStation 2 aftermarket cases). From this website, you can order any one of several colors available, each of which is translucent and ultraviolet sensitive, so a cold cathode light will cause the entire case to glow! You can build an Xbox that looks like the one shown in Figures 11.33 and 11.34.



Nothing says "Mods Inside" like a clear case!

### Assembling the Aftermarket Case

I will assume you have already read the chapter up to this point, so you will know how to remove the DVD-ROM front tray panel and replace it, and understand how to replace the controller port assemblies. All that remains at this point is to take the parts from your old Xbox case and assemble them inside the new aftermarket case.

## Aftermarket Cases 2 53 Installing the Front Button Assembly

Let's start with the new front panel. Figure 11.35 shows the parts needed to assemble the new front panel; they include the aftermarket clear front panel and buttons, along with the button circuit board that was removed from your old case.



FIGURE ? L34 The UV-sensitive clear case as seen from the top.

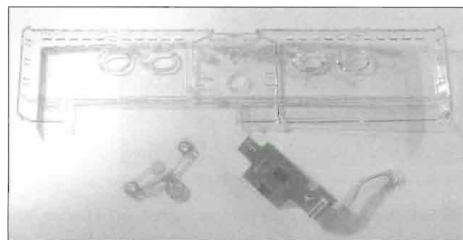


FIGURE I 1 35 The parts needed to assemble the front panel.

## CHAPTER 1 1 Replacing the Xbox Case

The buttons are installed as a single unit, attached by fragile plastic pieces. As a matter of fact, the entire aftermarket clear case cover and associated parts are made from very fragile plastic that will crack or break easily, so you must be very careful when you're installing these parts.

Carefully slide the front but Ion

assembly into the notches on the

back side of the new front panel, as

shown in Figure 11.36. Then press the top part down until it snaps into the tabs on the panel. Be

very careful at this stage because you can easily break the small tabs; a tiny dab of lubricating oil

is helpful.

### CAUTION

Warning! Be especially careful with the case cover because it is prone to cracking along the center if you exert even a tiny amount of weight on it before it has been installed over the Xbox case. It is also especially prone to breakage due to bending and twisting. The aftermarket case covers are very lightweight (and significantly more fragile) compared to the sturdy stock Xbox case covers.



FIGURE } 1.B6 Inserting the front button assembly into the new front panel.

The new buttons fit the button circuit board perfectly and were designed just for this new front panel (but not an original stock case). Figure 11.37 shows the button assembly in place.

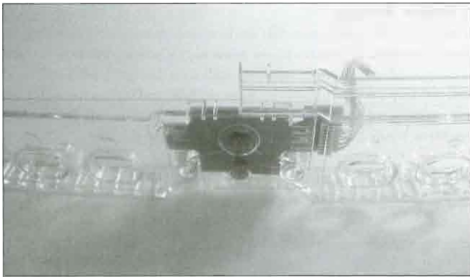


FIGURE 1 1 37 The power and eject button assembly has been installed.

### Attaching the Front Panel to the Case

With the button assembly in place, you can now attach the front panel to the case. Note that the aluminum case liner has already been installed. As a matter of fact, the new case cover and front panel are just installed on an original Xbox base. There is no "bottom" part of this aftermarket case; it just spruces up the front, top, and sides.

The front panel snaps into the front of the case, as shown in Figure 11.38. Be sure to feed the button wire plug through the large hole in the front before snapping the panel in place. The sides each have three tabs that must be snapped into place, and one tab on the bottom of the front panel keeps it firmly in place.





FIGURE \ 1.38 The clear front panel has been installed on the case.

## 256 CHAPTER 1 1 Replacing the Xbox Case Installing the Power Supply

The next step is to reinstall the Xbox components that you have come to know intimately thus far from previous chapters of this book. Let's start with the power supply which needs to be in place before the motherboard is installed. The power supply is installed on the right inside of the case. There are indentations that keep the power supply up above the liner, and tabs on the right edge that the power supply circuit board slides into. Make sure the screw holes line up; then replace the screws and tighten them. Figure 11.39 shows the power supply in the new case.

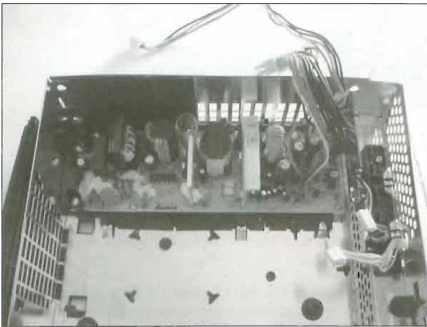


FIGURE 1 139 Installing the power supply into the new case.

### Installing the Controller Port Assemblies

Next, install the controller port assemblies by placing each one in the port openings inside the front panel of the case, and push down. Replace the two screws to hold down each assembly, as shown in Figure 11.40.

### Installing the Motherboard

The motherboard comes next (see Figure 11.41). You install the motherboard with the rear side first (positioning the LAN, video, and power ports in their respective openings in the back of the

case) and then gently lower the front side of the motherboard down into the case, lining up the screw holes. Install the screws and tighten them to keep the motherboard firmly in place.

After market Cases 2 57

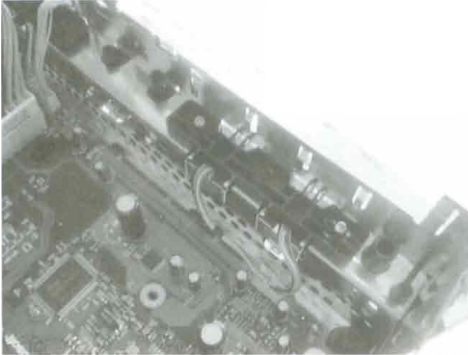


FIGURE 1 I p40 Installing the controller port assemblies.

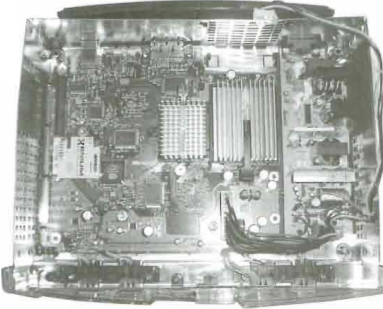


FIGURE 1 I \*41 Installing the motherboard into the new case.

258

## CHAPTER 1 1 Replacing the Xbox Case

### Installing the Remaining Components

You are now ready to install the drives (which should be intimately

familiar to you at this point, if you have read the previous chapters), followed by the case cover. The new case cover fits snugly, so you will want to make sure the drives are screwed in firmly so the case will fit properly. The final result is shown in Figure 11.42.1 don't know about you, but I think it looks spectacular!



FIGURE 11.42 The new Xbox looks terrific with the case mod finished.

### The System Jewel

You have probably been wondering up to this point where I got the custom Halo system jewel featured in the preceding figures. Although these jewels are available on eBay and on some Xbox fan sites, you can make one yourself fairly easily (and on any design that you like).

Just go to the nearest office supply store and buy some transparency sheets that will work with an inkjet or laser printer—the type used for an overhead projector. You will also need a sheet of laminating paper, which is clear and has a sticky side. Print the logo you want on the transparency sheet (at about 3" in height and width); then, with a felt pen, trace out the jewel on top of your Xbox case over the image you printed on the transparency.

Next, cut out a sheet of laminating hMm large enough to cover the circle and apply just enough to cover the circle. You can then cut out the custom transparent logo with a pair of scissors. Next, you can glue the new "system jewel" to your after market clear case using simple stick glue; just be sure to buy stick glue that is clear when dry.

### Summary

This chapter explained how to replace your stock Xbox case with a different type of case, such as the Halo Special Edition case or even an aftermarket clear case. Nothing quite nails the point home that your Xbox has "Mods Inside" like a clear case, so this is definitely one of the most fun

mods you can do with your Xbox—and it's inexpensive too!

## 12

### Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

#### ■ Overview of the swap

#### - The Hard Drive Upgrade Wizard

#### Verifying the upgrade process

This chapter explains how to replace the stock hard drive in your Xbox with a higher capacity drive. I will show you how to format the new drive, copy your existing hard drive data over to the new drive, and then use the new hard drive exclusively, shelving the original one. With a few exceptions, there are hundreds of hard drives that will work in the Xbox, as long as you have the means to format the drive so that it will work. The drive used as an example in this chapter is a Maxtor 250GB, 7200rpm drive, and it is utilized fully in my Xbox. I will show you how to do the same.

#### Overview of the Swap

After you install a mod chip, the next thing you'll usually want to do with your Xbox is install a larger capacity hard drive to be able to copy all of your media files to it, especially if you'll be running Xbox Media Center (covered in Chapter 10). I use one Xbox just for games and have another Xbox that I use in the living room as a media center, loaded up with music and videos, each with a very large hard drive. The Xbox dedicated to games has my game library stored on the hard drive, which allows me to keep the games all in

like new condition on my bookshelf. I especially like this capability because my young children "discovered" that the Xbox

## 260 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive

games are more fun than their Nintendo 64. My goal was to let them use the N64 because the cartridges are rugged, unlike Xbox game discs. For the most part, this approach works because the N64 is still—in my opinion—the best system ever designed for kids. However, some games such as Spider-Man 2 are not available on the N64, and my son loves this game—and who wouldn't, with free-roaming game play and realistic web slinging?

In the final analysis, an Xbox hard drive is far, far more useful as a file server than it is for just storing games. Many gigabytes of my PC drive are used up with music files that I ripped from my CD collection—which is the only way to do it. I rip my CDs to 320-kbit MP3s because my sole interest is in audio fidelity, not storage space. A typical music CD rips to about 100-120MB in MP3 format at 320-kbit. In contrast, the typical MP3 that you can download (such as sample tracks from [www.mp3.com](http://www.mp3.com)) are encoded at 96-kbit or 128-kbit at best, which sounds like white noise to me. I hate poor quality MP3s, so I never buy downloadable music (although it should be noted in all fairness that some contemporary online music stores like Napster and MusicMatch now provide 320-kbit MP3s). The result, however, is that my music collection is quite large—eight typical CDs per gigabyte.

Now, think about that for a moment. Eight doesn't sound like a lot. But did you know that a 250GB hard drive will be able to hold 2,000 CDs in MP3 format, even encoded at this highest bit sampling rate? I don't even own a fraction of that number of CDs, so I can put my entire CD collection—currently in a single 200-disc changer—on the Xbox hard drive and have the entire music collection set up in custom playlists using Xbox Media Center. After I set up this system, I was encouraged to buy even more CDs from artists I have always enjoyed (on the radio, and so forth) but had never gotten around to buying. You just can't compare anything with 320Kb encoded MP3s, unless you have gotten into music DVDs, something rather

new to the marketplace, but with a lot of potential, because DVD audios support Dolby Digital 5.1 Surround Sound, whereas a music CD supports only Dolby Stereo.

The real gist of the argument for a new Xbox hard drive is this: How much use do you get out of your PC's hard drive? A modded Xbox is more like a PC than a video game console, so you might want to take advantage of your mod chip investment.

If you own a late-model Xenium mod chip, you will be pleasantly surprised to learn that the Xenium OIS has a feature that will copy the original Xbox hard drive data over to a new hard drive—get this—using the same IDE cable normally plugged into the DVD-ROM drive!

### The Stock Xbox Hard Drive

The stock hard drive for your Xbox will be either a Seagate or Western Digital drive, like the one shown in Figure 12.1. The Xenium O/S will copy the contents of this original drive (including the all-important drive-locking key) to the new hard drive.

### Overview of the Swap

261



FIGURE 12.1 A stock Xbox hard drive made by Seagate.

### The Replacement Hard Drive

The replacement drive can be from any hard drive manufacturer, with one stipulation: The drive must support locking. Most drives can be locked, but there are a few exceptions that you should avoid for your Xbox because they will not work. Because so many hard drives are available, the best way to determine whether your drive is compatible with the Xbox (in other words, whether it supports locking) is to look it up on the Web. There is a website with a huge list (more than 600 entries at the time of this writing) of hard drives, showing which ones support the Xbox and which ones do not (look at the "Locking" column in the hard drive listing). You can search by hard drive make and model number. Be sure to check the status of a drive before you buy it new (especially if you buy from a mail-order company). You may peruse this compatibility chart at <http://xboxdrives.x-pec.com>.

Figure 12.2 shows the Maxtor DiamondMax Plus 9 (model number 6Y250P) that I am featuring in this chapter.

262

## CHAPTER 12 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive



FIGURE 12.2 The new hard drive that will be installed in my Xbox.

### Connecting Both Hard Drives

If you have a replacement hard drive ready to go and have verified that it supports locking, you are ready to connect the new drive to the IDE cable in your Xbox.

First, open the case and remove the DVD-ROM drive from the Xbox case (leave the IDE cable attached to the motherboard). You will have to first remove the hard drive package to get to the DVD-ROM drive. While you're at it, go ahead and just remove the stock hard drive from its carrier package because it's more convenient to work without the package getting in the way. The old and new drives are shown side by side in Figure 12.3. The new drive is thicker than the stock drive, but there is plenty of room under the hood, so don't worry about clearance.

### Master/Slave Settings

Now, it's important to make sure the drives are configured properly as master and slave. The stock Xbox hard drive should be configured as the master and the new drive as the slave. Figure 12.4 shows the diagram on the Seagate drive showing its setup.

(Check on your new hard drive for a similar master/slave pin setting label because it should be present on all hard drives. Figure 12.5 shows the pin settings on the new Maxtor drive that I will be installing into my Xbox.



FIGURE 12.3 A stock Seagate 10GB hard drive next to a new Maxtor 2 50GB drive.

f joduel warranty i\* voir\* U iny s\*af or label n ramavad,  
experiences shoe\*' in excess of 350 Qi

:yl



IS KCT

4XVE

I01-2B0

Willi

100236867

ion Level: OSMU8

Hi

lan Code: ZAVD1

llll

3.09

.if nana ^aa^

rreTf ~

■t■r v tmali Juvi

■Mvt > 1 • ii»«■

Mutiwlthin«n> 4LU cumpflfbli l'twi

■fthli (•\*!• lilltl



IFS Product Of China - 5

SilcCodc:WU +SV 0.57ft

Dale Code: 03445

FRA

FIGURE 12.4 Master/slave settings for the stock Seagate drive.

## CHAPTER 1 2 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive



Made under U S and foreign pa

For full warranty, patent or installation informal Maxtor is not responsible for consequential damac

toJOTnpef = OS(SLAVE)

J04 J42



FIGURE 12.5 Master/slave settings for the new Maxtor drive.

### Connecting the IDE Cable

Make sure the original drive is set as master and the new drive is set to slave because the Xenium O/S is expecting this configuration for the hard drive upgrade procedure. You can then hook up both drives to the IDE cable, with the new drive taking the place of the DVD-ROM drive on the cable, as shown in Figure 12.6. You can then plug the IDE cable into the motherboard.

### Connecting the Power Cables

Next, you'll need a Y adapter (shown in Figure 12.7) for the power cable to give power to the new drive (because the DVD-ROM drive uses a different type of power cable that plugs into the motherboard). You can purchase the Y adapter from any local computer store or retail electronics store such as Radio Shack or Fry's Electronics. One of my favorite websites— <http://www.newegg.com>—also carries Y adapters. Be careful, as you can

easily add a few hundred dollars' worth of gear after browsing the site for a while.

## Connecting Both Hard Drives

265

You can plug the power cable splitter to the Xbox's hard drive power cable to add an extra cable to power the new hard drive temporarily while the data is copied over from the old one, as shown in Figure 12.8.

After plugging the IDE cable into the motherboard, you will then want to plug each end of the power cable splitter into a hard drive. When it is all hooked up, your Xbox should look something like the setup shown in Figures 12.9 and 12.10.



FIGURE 12.6 Installing the IDE cable on both drives.

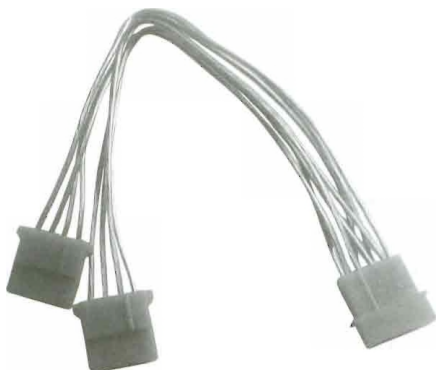


FIGURE 12.7 A Y splitter will provide power to both hard drives.

## 266 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive



FIGURE 12.8 The Y splitter is connected to the power cable.



FIGURE 12.9 Both hard drives are now connected to the Xbox.



FIGURE 12.10 View of the dual hard drive setup from the front.

### The Hard Drive Upgrade Wizard

Now, go ahead and plug in the Xbox and press the eject button to bring up the Xenium O/S. If there are any errors in your drive settings, the Xenium O/S might still come up, or you may get a "frag" (where the front light flashes, alternating from red to green), at which point you should recheck the hard drive settings and cable installation. (This problem will most likely occur if you press the power button rather than the eject button to bring up the Xenium O/S, as most Dashboards will pitch a fit over the dual-drive setup by default.)

If Xenium O/S boots but detects a problem with the drive jumpers, it might "Kernel Panic " which results in a flashing red eject light for 10 seconds, followed by a reboot. If this happens, you'll need to double check that your original Xbox hard drive is set to Master, and the new drive is set to Slave.

### Running the Drive Upgrade Wizard

If all goes as expected, you should soon see the Xenium O/S main menu. Highlight Disk Tools and select it, as shown in Figure 12.11,

The Disk Tools menu will come up. Highlight the Drive Upgrade Wizard option, as shown in Figure 12.12, and select it.



FIGURE 12.11 The main menu of the Xenium O/S.

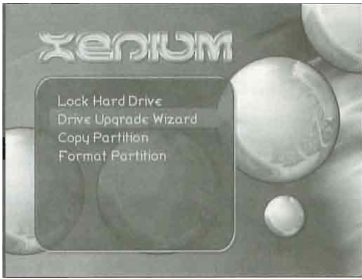


FIGURE 12.12 The Disk Tools menu.

A new screen will appear, as shown in Figure 12.13, with the following message: "This wizard will walk you through the steps of upgrading your Xbox's hard drive. Press 'Ok' to continue, or 'Cancel' to exit" Select the Ok button.

The next screen that comes up (see Figure 12.14) provides some instructions on how to set up the hard drives so that the Drive Upgrade Wizard procedure will work correctly. Basically, this screen

tells you how to configure the drives, just like you have already done, with the stock drive as master and the new drive as the slave. Select the Ok button to continue.



Preparing to start the Drive Upgrade Wizard procedure.

Before we begin, please ensure that the replacement drive is attached in place of DVD-ROM, and that it is properly jumpered to be a slave drive.

Before we begin, please ensure that the replacement drive is attached in place of DVD-ROM, and that it is properly jumpered to be a slave drive.

hard drive's manual or look on I I Itself for details on the jumper u  
If ipu have not vjcl" attached v^our drive, pkosc turn oll'Ljour Xbox  
and da so npw

Ok Car- Shutdown

FIGURE 12,14 This screen provides instructions on how to install the drives.

The next screen that comes up (shown in Figure 12.15) tells you that the new drive will be formatted to work only in an Xbox and that all data will be lost. If you are using a used hard drive, and you like the files on that drive, dont press Ok at this point. Instead, first hook it up to your

## 270 CHAPTER 12 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive

PC and then save the data, because no one (not even Peter Norton) will be able to save you after this step.

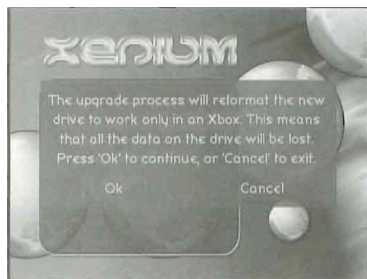


FIGURE I 2J S This screen warns that the new hard drive will be formatted.

And just because Team Xodus is so used to newbies, there is yet another- screen that asks whether you are ready to begin the process. This screen appears in case you are having last-minute doubts about the whole thing (see Figure 12.16).



FIGURE 12.16 The final confirmation dialog box before the upgrade process is started.

## The Hard Drive Upgrade Wizard

271

A screen will come up asking whether you would like to create one large "extra" partition for your files called F, or whether you would rather create two partitions, F and G. I recommend going with just one large F partition because it is easier that way, but if you have a really large drive like my Maxtor 250GB, splitting it into two parts, F and G, might be a good idea. The standard Xbox partitions will be skimmed off the top first (which takes up only 2-3 gigs), and then the remaining space will be divided between the two.

## Formatting the New Drive and Transferring Data

At this point, the Drive Upgrade Wizard will either go ahead with the upgrade by formatting the new drive and then copying data from the old drive, or it will come up with an error. Many conditions could cause an error, primarily due to an improper master/slave setting, bent IDE pins, or an improperly connected power cable. Figure 12.17 shows one possible error message. The "unlock error" shown here indicates that the original drive is not recognized, which may be due to a problem with the IDE cable or power cable.



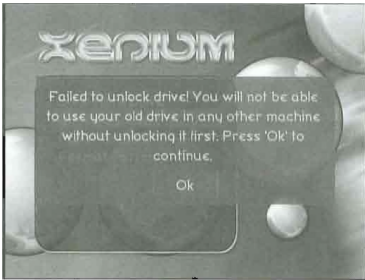


FIGURE 12.17 One possible error message that may be displayed if an error occurs.

Assuming that everything is configured properly, you should instead see a screen that tells you the new drive is being formatted, which is a brief process, and then files will be copied from the old drive to the new drive. You will see a screen similar to Figure 12.18 that shows each file as it is copied to the new drive.

The Xenium O/S Drive Upgrade Wizard is a wonderfully useful tool that makes it a breeze to upgrade your hard drive. When the process is complete, you will see a screen that looks like Figure 12.19.



FIGURE 5 2.18 Files are copied from the old hard drive to the new drive.

our new drive not succetifulkj been  
prepared

Remove the old hard drive, and replace your old hard drive with the new hard drive. Don't forget to jumper it to Cable Select first.

FIGURE 12.19 The drive upgrade process has finished successfully.

## Verifying the Upgrade Process 273

### Verifying the Upgrade Process

After the upgrade process is complete, you'll want to verify that it succeeded. A lot of things were done automatically for you by the Xenium O/S in this process, including the creation of all the partitions used by the Xbox and transfer of the hard drive lock key to the new drive. I'll assume that you have installed EvolutionX already on your old drive (and if so, it will be on the new drive now). If you have not, refer to Chapter 8, "EvolutionX Dashboard," for instructions on how to install EvolutionX.

Power down your Xbox; then remove the IDE cable and power cables from the drives. Store the original Xbox hard drive in a safe place because without the lock key, your Xbox will never be able to use another hard drive; you'll need this if your new drive fails for any reason.

Now, set the new hard drive to master, reassemble the drive package, plug everything back in, and reassemble your Xbox. You can then power up your Xbox and run EvolutionX. Figure 12.20 shows the drive information reported by EvolutionX. Your version and skin in EvolutionX may look different, but the information will basically be the same. Here, I have chosen to create two partitions, F and G, along with the standard Xbox partitions (C and E are for files; and X, Y, and Z are used for cache). Note that my F partition has already been filled up with a whole bunch of files, as it is only about half full at this point.

P"

1/1\*2002

SettlriBs I InFo

PfB\*fJ

Free Fre«

UIUI'Fi



FIGURE 12\*20 Verifying the new hard drive from the EvolutionX Settings screen.

What happens if your G partition reports 0 space free? That is a common problem that you can easily remedy by using the XBtool I discussed back in Chapter 8, which included a section on

## 274 Upgrading the Xbox Hard Drive

customizing and installing a new BIOS. You can use XBtool to configure an EvoX BIOS with LBA48 support (which provides support for very large drives—and we have Oz PaulB to thank for the LBA48 mod). Interestingly enough, this is a common problem with Windows 2000 because a similar LBA48 "driver" has to be installed on Windows 2000 PCs to work with large drives. The Xbox shares the problem, which is completely excusable—it was never designed to work with super-large drives. We should feel very lucky to be able to do this at all!

I remember a time when I had to install a special driver so Windows 95 would support my new 500MB (yes, that's megabyte) hard drive, but that was another era....

## Summary

This chapter explained how to upgrade the stock Xbox hard drive

with a new drive with greatly expanded capacity. You learned that your meager Xbox console will support hard drives of up to 250-300GB (and perhaps even higher because these are top of the line at present). You learned how to use the Drive Upgrade Wizard in the Xenium O/S to automatically format the new drive and transfer all the data from your old Xbox hard drive to the new drive. The result is an even more severely modded Xbox, now with scads of storage space.

13

## Lighting Up the Case

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

- Cosmetic Xbox modifications
- Cold cathode lighting
- Custom lighting with LEDs
- Putting it all together

This chapter is lighter than previous chapters because it focuses on the cosmetic aspects of Xbox modeling, with emphasis on installing a light kit in your Xbox. You will realize better results with a clear case (such as the aftermarket cases covered in Chapter 1 1, "Replacing the Xbox Case"), but a stock Xbox case can still be modded with lighting kits to produce a nice glowing effect in areas such as the side vents, controller ports, and jewel at the top.

### Cosmetic Xbox Modifications

There comes a time when you have done everything that it is possible to do with your Xbox to make it do just about everything but take out the trash for you, when you are finally, after weeks of modifications, ready to reinstall those six screws into the bottom of your Xbox—because it is done.

You may not be interested in cosmetic enhancements to your Xbox,

preferring to keep the "Mods Inside" something of a mystery. Maybe you don't want to let on what you have under the hood, like a primed 1967 Mustang with the stock "6-cylinder" running horse logo on the side that—to everyone's surprise—is actually packing a Ford Racing 347 stroker engine with a Paxton supercharger.

## 276 CHAPTER I 3 Lighting Up the Case

Nothing says "cheese" better than a neon light kit under your car > so the same may be true for video game consoles and PCs. But, if you think about it for a minute, who cares? It's not like anyone thinks you are cool because you own an Xbox in the first place! And second, cold cathodeequipped PCs with sound modulation kits are now such a part of pop culture that it's like the return of psychedelic disco. Instead of a spinning ball above the dance floor, we have bubblelights mounted on the side of PC monitors that flash in sync with the music and sound effects in the game. So where are the VW Beetles and bell bottom pants? Well, at a typical LAN party, you are likely to see quite a few "Strongbad Owns You" and "Got Root?" t-shirts, so I guess it's a start.

Lighting up your Xbox case is fun. Basically, anything you can find available for your PC will work in the Xbox, for two reasons:

Proof #1. The Xbox has a standard hard drive power cable. Oh, this is the bomb! You can do anything when you have one of these babies.

Proof #2. The Xbox also has a standard case fan header on the motherboard. Whoa! Do you know how many different kinds of case fans alone there are for the PC today? At least five or six. Note that the Xbox case fan is smaller than a typical 80mm PC fan, so a custom PC fan will have to be filed down to fit in the Xbox case.

Proof #3. Okay, this isn't a proof, but it's a good reason. Cold cathode lights are fun to play with too. Figure 13.1 shows me with my Yoda lightsaber. Yes, I am very young—but age matters not!



FIGURE 13\*1 Cold cathode jewels are perfect for constructing Yoda lightsabers.

277

If you own a Xenium mod chip, it probably came with an external LED module. The purpose of the external LED is to basically provide status information on the Xenium, which is tucked away down below the DVD-ROM drive and therefore invisible. (I meant to say not visible. I've been watching too much Scooby Doo lately.)

You can combine the external LED modules together to add multiple LEDs to your Xbox (see Figure 13.2). The only problem with the module is that it is too big, the wires get in the way, and it just doesn't look good anywhere on the outside of the case. I do think it's a good idea to use one of them on the inside front panel (next to the DVD-ROM tray there is space for it). But if you just want to liven up your Xbox, I'll show you an easier way later in this chapter.

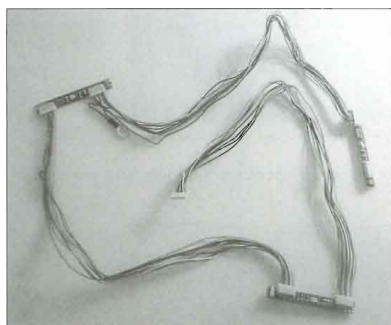


FIGURE 13.2 The Xenium LED adapters can be chained together.

## Cold Cathode Lighting

Cold cathode lights produce a very brightly colored light that tends to produce a good level of raised ambience in the case, centered around the light source—which is usually a circular or straight tube. A single circular cold cathode light is probably enough to light up your entire Xbox case from within, but if you opt for straight tube lights, you may squeeze one in on each side of the case.

Figure 13.3 shows a typical circular cold cathode light kit. This particular kit was designed for the front panel of a PC case to give the case a nice custom look of glowing from within.

## 278 Lighting Up the Case



FIGURE 1,3.3 A cold cathode circular lamp designed for a PC case front.

Figure 13.4 shows another type of cold cathode light kit, with a stick light that is suitable for the drive rails inside a PC case.

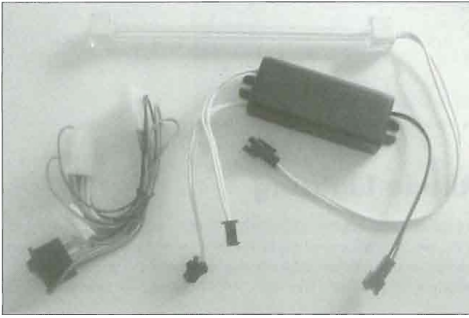


FIGURE 13.4 A cold cathode stick lamp provides brightly colored light.

## Cold Cathode Lighting

279

There is room for a small light stick in the front bottom of the Xbox case, and may be room for one next to the DVD-ROM drive on the bottom left side of the case. When I was considering the types of cosmetic mods I wanted to do, I decided to use only what would fit inside the case. There is room in the Xbox case if you are creative, but you should be careful not to put anything near the power supply because most of the components on the power supply get very hot and will easily melt a wire or light if it gets too close!

## How About a Glowing Jewel?

The idea with the round light is to mount it below the custom case jewel, as shown in Figure 13.5.



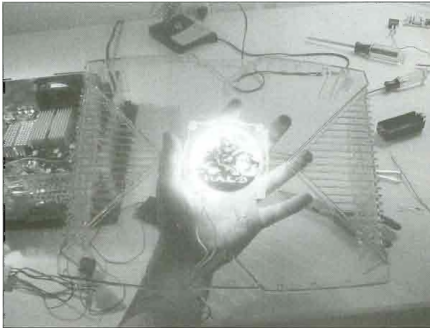


FIGURE 1 3,5 Lighting up the jewel produces a nice effect in the case.

A close-up view of the cold cathode light underneath the custom jewel shows how well it causes the jewel to glow (see Figure 13.6).

### Removing the Cold Cathode Bulb

The only problem with the circular cold cathode light is the casing, which is too thick to fit under the Xbox case cover. You don't want it being pressed against the drives, or it could crack. The solution is to just remove the actual cold cathode "bulb" from the plastic enclosure, which comes apart easily. You might need to crack some enclosures to extract the bulb. Take care that you don't

## 280 CHAPTER 1 3 Lighting Up the Case

damage the bulb itself when removing it from the enclosure. The result is a much smaller light that will easily mount on the underside of the case cover, as shown in Figure 13.7.



FIGURE 13.6 Close-up of the cold cathode shining through the custom jewel.



FIGURE 13.7 The cold cathode light has been removed from the plastic casing.

281

### Gluing the Light to the Case Cover

The next step is to glue the cold cathode light to the underside of the case cover. I used simple "super glue" available at any grocery or hardware store. Figure 13.8 shows the light mounted to the case cover. A few drops of super glue on the cold cathode tube is sufficient to hold it to the underside of the case.

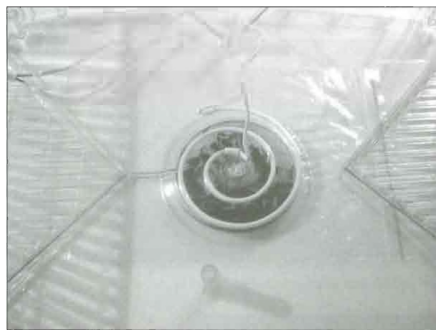


FIGURE 13,8 The cold cathode light is glued inside the case cover.

Because I'm going to add some LEDs to the inside of the case, I'll show you the final result of the case mods at the end of the chapter.

### Custom Lighting with LEDs

You can easily create your own custom case light mods with super bright LEDs, a few resistors, and a spool of wire. There are many colors available for an LED, as a quick perusal of an electronics store will reveal to you. You can buy LEDs individually or usually by the bag full, and in a variety of colors. Figure 13.9 shows an LED with a resistor soldered to the positive lead on the LED.

### Creating Your Own LED Light Show

The positive lead is the longer wire on the LED. You need to trim the long wire under the LED and then trim the resistor ends, as Figure 13.9 shows. The resistor works regardless of which

## CHAPTER 13 Lighting Up the Case

direction it is pointed. I used a 100-ohm resistor, which has a stripe pattern of Brown-Black-Brown-Gold. You can look up the resistor color codes on the Web. Pocket resistor reference books are also available at your favorite electronics store. As long as you "resist" the voltage coming in to the LED, you can connect it to just about

any power source inside the Xbox—which are either 5 or 12 volts. You will always want to solder your LED leads to the wires used to connect them to a power source, as shown in Figure 13.10 (after you do a quick power-on test to verify that the LED is working).

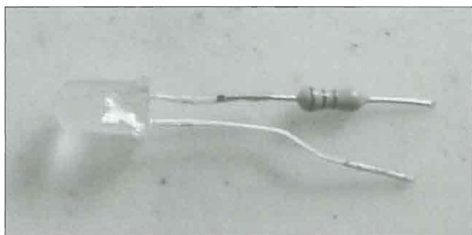


FIGURE 13.9 A super bright LED with a 100-ohm resistor attached.

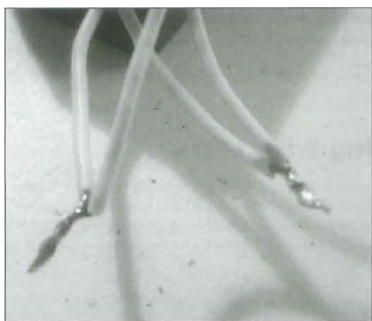


FIGURE 13.10 When you have a working LED, solder the wires together.

## Custom Lighting with LEOs

283

### Building the Main LED Wire Loom

You can use a single power cable adapter to provide power to all of the LEDs you want to install into your Xbox case. You can buy a power cable adapter at any computer or electronics store, although you may have to buy a cheap case fan or light kit if the store doesn't carry just the power cable. You will want to trim off any plug at the

end of the positive and negative wires and then solder your LEDs to those wires, as shown in Figure 13.11 (part of the wires is exposed for additional LED leads).

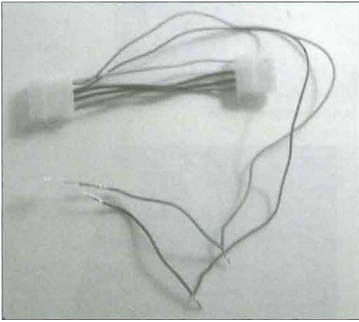


FIGURE 13.11:

1 The LED is soldered to the power cable adapter.

After adding another LED attached to a longer wire, I installed the two LEDs inside the front of the case, to send the light out through the side case vents, as shown in Figure 13.12.

You can see a close-up of the right LED in Figure 13.13. Note how I routed the LED wires down at the bottom front of the case, below all other cables, and taped the positive and negative wires to the inside of the case to keep them from moving around.

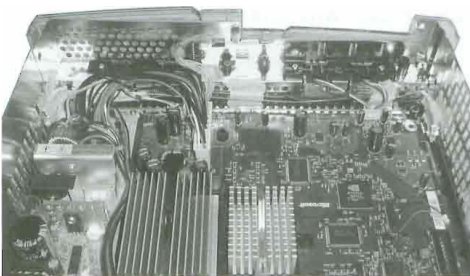


FIGURE 13.12 The LED assembly is mounted inside the case.

Figure 13.14 shows the left LED taped to the inside of the case. Be sure to keep the wires out of the way of the drive mounts on the bottom of the case; otherwise, you won't be able to get the drives to

fit back into the case.

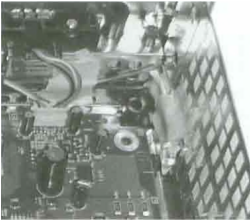


FIGURE 13.13 Taping the right LED to the inside of the case.

### Putting It All Together 285

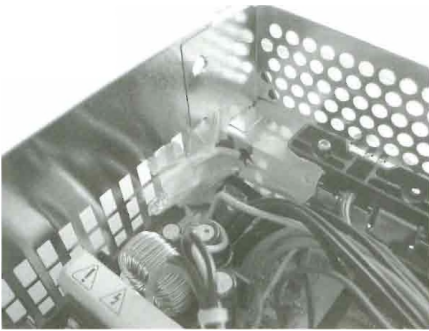


FIGURE 13.14 Taping the left LED to the inside of the case.

### Putting It All Together

After you install the cold cathode light and the two LEDs, the result is a highly customized Xbox case that looks terrific and just screams "Mods Inside!" Take a gander at Figure 13.15.



FIGURE 1 3.1 5 The side-vent LEDs and cold cathode light are installed.

## 286 CHAPTER 13 Lighting Up the Case

### Examining the Cold Cathode Light

You will also obtain very good results with a stock (black) Xbox case, because the side vents allow light to pass through. However, you will need to replace the stock system jewel (on top) with a new jewel to really see a cold cathode light under the case cover, in order to achieve a result similar to the one shown in Figure 13.16), because the stock case jewel is opaque. As an alternative to replacing a stock jewel, you should consider buying an aftermarket case or finding a "Halo Special Edition" case, which is also translucent and looks fantastic with light mods installed!



FIGURE 13,16 The glowing case jewel is really bright!

There is another option that you might consider if you purchase an aftermarket case like I have used as an example here. These cases are UV (ultraviolet) sensitive, meaning the case will react if you install a UV light. I have used cold cathode here, but a UV light has more of an ambient glow to it, especially when the case is UV sensitive! Figure 13.17 shows the clear case with some UV reaction showing, especially on the right side (in color it looks somewhat purplish).

### The Custom LEDs

Let's take a look from the right side of the case to see how the LEDs turned out. As you can see from Figure 13.18, the right LED is not only glowing inside the case, but shining its light through the case vent and reflecting off the side of the case, exactly like I was hoping it would!

## Summary

287



FIGURE 13.17 View of this heavily modified Xbox from the front.



FIGURE 13.18 This LED is shining through the right case vent.

The other side of the case is actually a different color than the right LED (blue and green).

## Summary

I have shown you only a small example of the light mods you can do with your Xbox to greatly enhance the appearance of your Xbox case. Cold cathode is definitely an impressive look but may be too strong for the taste of some. Ultraviolet is a great option that you should definitely consider if you have invested in an aftermarket clear case (especially if it is in a designer color rather than my



"regular" clear case). After you have learned how to construct an LED loom (with a 100ohm resistor and wires), there is no limit to the creative work you can render in your Xbox using LEDs in a variety of colors.

14

## Cooling Down Your Xbox

Here are the key points covered in this chapter:

m Software cooling solutions

### ■ Active cooling solutions

One thing that many modders take for granted is the thermal condition of their Xboxes. In the rush to install a mod chip, a new hard drive, and case lighting, many assume that the Xbox will run with the same operating temperature that it ran in the stock configuration. However, modifications to the Xbox tend to decrease airflow within the case, which is critical to cooling and based on the limited dimensions of the case's design. Therefore, if you have modified the Xbox case airflow dynamics in any way, you will want to install an active cooling solution to counter the heat buildup that may occur.

## Software Cooling Solutions

Depending on your Xbox's configuration, you may get away with software-based thermal management, which basically means that you can adjust the speed of the Xbox case fan to improve cooling. By default, the Xbox fan runs at 20% of full speed. This means that if the fan is rated at 7,500rpm, the Xbox utilizes it only at 1,500rpm. This minimal setting was

290

designed to keep the Xbox cool—but also quiet. The fan is quite loud when running at a full speed of 100%.

## Setting Fan Speed in BIOS

You can control the Xbox case fan in two ways using software: by setting the fan speed in the BIOS or by using a Dashboard (or other program) to control the fan. You can use XBtool to set the default fan speed that will Figure 14.1).

### CAUTION

A fan speed setting of 10% is negligible and may lead to overheating your Xbox, which could damage components. A fan speed of at least 20% is advisable, and I recommend 50% to keep your Xbox cool with aftermarket parts installed.

be maintained unless a program adjusts the fan (see

H B - ^ o a \

I

Xlnttx Oow

E-\*Aiuy.v M? f uOfi.S 1 Ul .01J ■ BEOS tVft MKBfW I  
m\*WW917CCA521 ?\*EFA

fci«fc> K. • U ••'

r .\_\_ EUrfr.,i^r. DW

n .;■;•

Jfcl

F

:m j-j q\ |i

-d 5 cq r

P~ IBM? -i\*C\*t Jftl D\*Fi# Ftf U»n ratio OfIttWli

[partisan »T\*fc lots i7J&JfivttmTliliB\*t\* r \*\*■\*« Had t»h\* Pultun  
TaLte

caratf UDS

1- BfKM |

P«L\_ |

1\*1fB\*t .vt,... ] im\*M?t\

FIGURE 14.1 Setting the default fan speed in the BIOS.

If you would like to perform some tests on your Xbox with various fan speed settings, you can come up with a good setting that meets your Xbox usage habits. If you use it as a media center and file server, you may want to increase the fan speed and/or install a secondary fan.

## Software Cooling Solutions

291

### Setting Fan Speed in XBMC

Xbox Media Center is one Dashboard that includes a temperature setting, allowing you to adjust the fan speed directly. Figure 14.2 shows the System Settings screen (which you can open by going into Settings, General, System). You can set a reasonable temperature here (such as 135° F), and XBMC will adjust the fan speed, like a thermostat.

The second fan control option in this screen is a direct fan speed control setting, shown in Figure 14.3. This setting can be adjusted from 10% to 100%.

You can monitor the fan speed from within most Dashboards. In Xbox Media Center, go to Settings, System Info, to see the screen shown in Figure 14.4. Here, you can see the temperature with the fan set to 10%. The highest I have ever recorded in my Xbox is 145° F, which is not dangerously high but could contribute to your Xbox components wearing out sooner (especially the hard drive). You really don't want to see how high you can take it because plastic

parts inside the Xbox (including wire



FIGURE 14,2 Setting the Auto temperature control in XBMC.

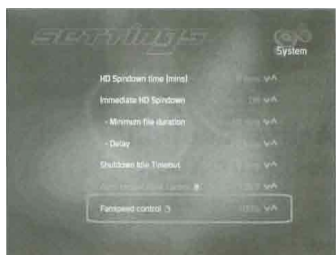


FIGURE 143 Setting the fan speed directly (by percentage) in XBMC.

292

## CHAPTER 14 Cooling Down Your Xbox

insulation) may melt if you let the temperature inside the case rise too high. You might not see any visible damage to your Xbox because thermal damage often affects portions of a processor or memory chip, and the damage may result in occasional system instability or crashes—that PC users often blame exclusively on the O/S, unfortunately.

By simply changing the fan speed to 100%, you can see a dramatic drop in the overall temperature within the case, primarily with the CPU and GPU, shown in Figure 14.5. The temperature dropped from 145° to 125° F with a simple fan speed adjustment. Use any speed from 20% to 100%, although you II notice the fan is quite

loud at 100%.

## Active Cooling for Your Xbox

One drawback to software-based fan adjustment is that it manages to cool down only the CPU because it is closest to the fan, although the GPU and other processors do benefit from the venting of hot air within the case (while cool air is drawn from the vents on each side of the case). The stock hard drive is a 5,400rpm drive that stays fairly cool even under constant use. But a new, highperformance hard drive upgrade requires an active cooling solution; otherwise, it will increase the

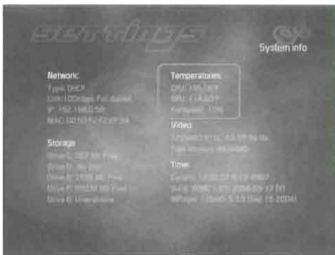


FIGURE 14.4 Monitoring the temperature with a fan speed of 10%.

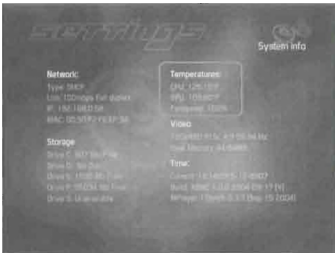


FIGURE 14.5

## CAUTION

The temperature drops dramatically with a fan speed of 100%.

Never, ever work inside the case with the power cord plugged in. Active hot wires exposed by the power supply could electrocute you, and even a minor shock is dangerous to your health.

ambient temperature in the case, which contributes to heating up all the other components, as well as decreasing the life of the hard drive itself. Hard drives will deteriorate rapidly if they overheat, and that is the number one reason why hard drives fail.

Just for fun, I'd like to show you what active cooling will do for the CPU and GPU. I moved the drives out of the way and plugged in two small fans, one on each heatsink, as shown in Figure 14.6. The bigger fan is 60mm wide, and the smaller fan is 40mm wide. This is not a permanent configuration, although it is food for thought, as you might consider a case modification in order to accommodate active cooling.

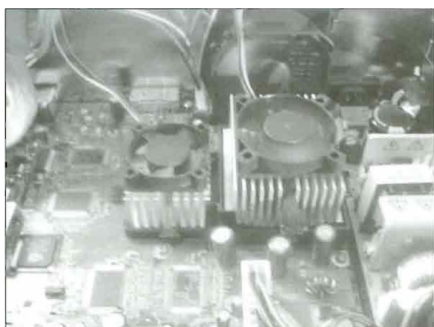


FIGURE 14\*6 Did someone forget to install these in my Xbox?

I configured Xbox Media Center to run the fans at 100%, which pushes them to their rpm limits, and then recorded the temperature drop with a total of three fans running in the case (the original case fan and the two smaller fans sitting on the heatsinks). The result is very encouraging, if only there was room to mount these fans. The drives don't fit with the fans in place, but I'm certain that a 40mm fan could be placed beside the CPU to blow air onto the CPU heatsink from the side. If you want to do something like this, I recommend a few drops of glue from a hot glue gun to keep the fan in position.

The resulting temperature drop with the two additional fans is

dramatic, as you can see in Figure 14.7. The temperature dropped from 145° F to 125° F by maximizing the fan output. The temperature was further dropped to 107° F for the CPU and 96.8° F for the GPU with active cooling! Why would you want to do this if the Xbox was designed to run as-is? Because modding

294

## CHAPTER 14 Cooling Down Your Xbox



introduces changes to the closed architecture, and the addition of lighting, a mod chip, and a highspeed hard drive increases heat, so every attempt to cool it down will add to the longevity of your Xbox.

### Hard Drive Cooling

If you have upgraded your hard drive to a large-capacity drive, but it is not one of the faster models—such as a 7,200rpm drive—you can probably get away without adding a fan to cool off the drive. But if you have upgraded to a 7 > 200rpm drive like the one I installed in the Xbox featured in this book, it definitely needs cooling. The trick to cooling is sucking heat away from something, not just throwing cold air at something. The key word here is airflow. Consider the effect of the water-cooling systems available for PCs. The whole point of a water-cooling system is to suck heat away from the components by flowing water across a metal surface that is mounted to a processor. When the water flows over the metal surface, heat is transferred to the water, which carries the heat away. One hopes there is enough water circulating in the water-cooling system to allow the water to cool before it comes into

contact with the hot components again.

An active air-cooling system is a lot easier to deal with than water-cooling because no sealed hoses and pumps are required. Usually, an air-cooling system simply involves the use of one or more high-speed fans that blow air onto components as well as directing air out of the case.

#### FIGURE 14.7

Active cooling drops the CPU and GPU to "touchable" temperatures.

#### Finding Room in the Case

As far as I can tell, the only realistic place to put an intake fan inside the Xbox case is right behind the DVDROM drive. This will require you to drill holes in the metal liner inside the case so the fan will be able to draw in air from outside. You might even want to cut out a hole in the

#### CAUTION

The Xbox power supply has a built-in surge suppressor that will shut off the power (using a strong relay) if the power fluctuates by even a small percentage. You must not plug and unplug fans and lights and so forth with the power turned on, or the Xbox will shut down. This is generally a bad thing and could lead to damaged components in your Xbox. Power loss is especially harmful to the hard drive.

#### Active Cooling for Your Xbox 295

metal liner using a drill, Dremel, or similar tool (after disassembling the Xbox, of course) to provide the maximum amount of airflow into the case. You would then mount a fan in an orientation that sucks air into the case.

Despite the good location and available room, I have opted in this chapter to install a hard drive cooling fan instead. I would encourage you to do both if you wish: an intake fan behind the



DVDROM drive and a small fan to cool the hard drive. Both options will increase air circulation within the case. Just be sure your fans don't draw too much juice from the Xbox power supply.

### Installing a Hard Drive Cooling Fan

The minimal cooling solution should at least include a small fan to cool off the hard drive, which can get very hot when in constant use (especially the high-rpm models). Even if you have installed a 5,400rpm drive, a hard drive fan will increase the life of this otherwise relatively cool-running drive (because every degree of heat contributes to eventual failure in an electromechanical device).

A 40mm fan fits quite snugly in the hard drive tray with the case cover in place. You may want to mount one or two small fans like the one shown in Figure 14.8 behind the hard drive (because two would do an even better job at cooling).

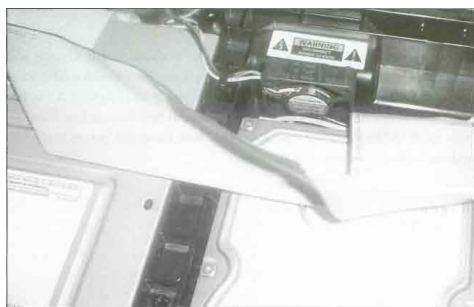


FIGURE 14.8 A new high-performance hard drive upgrade requires active cooling.

As you can see from Figure 14.9, the 40mm fan fits underneath the case cover with a little room to spare. A fan this size is very convenient for Xbox cooling because you can find many places inside the Xbox case where such a small fan will fit without getting in the way of other components (such as the two large drive trays).

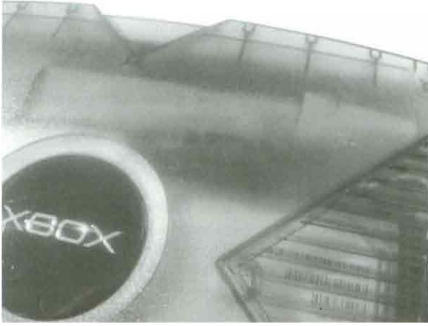


FIGURE 14.9 The 40mm fan is small enough to fit beneath the case cover.

## Summary

This chapter provided just a brief summary of the cooling options available for the Xbox. It is a good idea to add one or more fans to the inside of your Xbox case if you have modded it because heat will eventually wear out components like hard drives, especially if you use your Xbox for long periods at a time. You may not notice any component damage at first because heat damage is not immediately noticeable. Adding a fan or two under the Xbox hood will ensure that your Xbox runs reliably and consistently cool for years to come.

## Xbox Resources



■ his appendix provides a list of online resources that should provide you with additional information that you may refer to in the event that you encounter a problem or additional Xbox mods not covered in this book. This list is by no means complete, but does represent the main sites I visit most often.

## Xbox Information Sites

Xbox 365. <http://www.xbox365.com>. Nice Xbox fan site with an underground feel to it.

Official Xbox Magazine. <http://www.officialxboxmagazine.com>. Since it's "official" this magazine is definitely not XBN, the "unofficial" Xbox magazine. Good content with fair reviews.

Official Xbox Site, <http://www.xbox.com>. The official Xbox home site on the Web.

The Xbox Reporter, <http://www.xbreporter.com>. Reports on the latest Xbox news and provides articles about Xbox games, hardware, and accessories.

IGN Xbox. <http://xbox.ign.com>. Online magazine that covers all things related to the Xbox and provides game reviews.

Team Xbox. <http://www.teamxbox.com>. Good breadth of information about Xbox hardware, software, game reviews, rumors, and news.

## 298 APPENDIX A Xbox Resources

GameSpy Xbox. <http://xbox.gamespy.com>. Mainly dedicated to game reviews and rumors that almost never come true, but good overall content.

Xbox Gamers, <http://www.xboxgamers.com>. An attractive Xbox fan site with news, rumors, previews, reviews, and interviews.

Xbox Nation, <http://www.xbnmag.com>. A good alternative magazine (full color, glossy, retail) dedicated to the Xbox.

Xbox Scene, <http://www.xbox-scene.com>. Contains a wealth of information for Xbox modding.

Xbox Solution, <http://www.xboxsolution.com>. Nice fan site with personal reviews, surveys, and blog-style comments.

## Mod Chip Manufacturers

SmartXX. <http://www.smartxx.com>. Manufactures the SmartXX mod chip. Team Xodus. <http://www.teamxodus.com>. Manufactures the Xenium mod chip. Team Xecuter. <http://www.teamxecuter.com>. Manufactures the Xecuter mod chip.

## Xbox Hardware Sites

American Xbox Mod Chips, <http://www.americanxboxmodchips.com>. Despite the obnoxious name, this site offers all of the Xbox mod chips at reasonable prices.

Custom Xbox Cases, <http://www.customps2.com>. Sells aftermarket "clear" cases in the following translucent colors: crystal, blue, yellow, orange, and green.

ModChip.com. <http://www.modclap.com>. Offers all available Xbox mod chips for sale at competitive prices.

Mod Chip Man. <http://www.modchipman.com>. Offers mod chips and other hardware accessories for sale.

NewEgg.com. <http://www.newegg.com>. Good source for Xbox-compatible hard drives at a good price, usually with free shipping.

Xbox Chips, <http://www.xbox-chips.com>. Xbox mod chip online store and information site.

Xbox Hackz. <http://www.xb0xhack2.com>. A hardware site providing information about Xbox mod chips and related information.

## Xbox Software Sites 299

### Xbox Software Sites

Avalaunch. <http://www.teamavalaunch.com>. Home site for the Avalaunch Dashboard with online documentation and screenshots.

EvolutionX. <http://www.evolutionx.info>. Home site for the EvolutionX Dashboard, with online documentation, forums, and version information.

Xbox Linux, <http://www.xbox-linux.org>. All the information you need to install and run Linux on your modded Xbox.

Xbox Media Center (XBMC). <http://www.xboxmediacenter.com>. Home of the XBMC Dashboard/application for your modded Xbox.

Xbox Saves, <http://www.xbox-saves.com>. Provides a database of saved games that are available for download.

Xenium O/S. <http://www.teamxodus.com>. Information and downloadable manuals for the Xenium O/S (pre-installed on Xenium mod chips).

## Index

### Numbers

1.0 Xbox, 57 1.0-1.1 motherboards

DO points, 89 LPC ports, 86

1.1 Xbox, 57

1.2 Xbox, 58 1.2-1.6 motherboards

DO points, 89 LPC ports, 87

1.3 Xbox, 58

1.4 Xbox, 58

1.5 Xbox, 59

1.6 Xbox, 59

About Avalaunch option (Avalaunch Dash), 204

active cooling, 292-294

airflow, 294

fan installation, 295

fan placement, 294-295

adapters, solderless, 8993

aftermarket cases, assembling, 252

controller port assemblies, 256

drives, 258

front button assembly, 253-254

front panels, 255

motherboards, 256

power supply, 256

Aladdin mod chips, 80

Applications menu (Avalaunch Dash), 191

assembling cases

aftermarket cases, 252

controller port assemblies, 256

drives, 258

front button assembly, 253-254

front panels, 255

Halo system jewels, 258

motherboards, 256

power supply, 256

302

assembling cases

stock cases

controller port assemblies, 246-248

DVD-ROM tray panels, 251

motherboards, 248-249

power supply, 246

audio CDs, listening to, 221 223

AV Settings screen (Avalaunch Dash), 198

Avalaunch Dash

acquiring, 1 79

adding to Launch menu, 181-185

Applications menu, 191

custom BIOS, 180-181

Emulators menu, 1 91

File Manager, 191-193

Games menu, 187-188

game installation, 189-191

game properties, 189

game titles, 188-189

saved games, downloading, 189

installation, 1 79

custom BIOS, 180-181

files, copying to Xbox, 181

Launch menu, adding Avalaunch to,  
181-185

IRC Client, 194

Reboot option, 204

Settings screen, 1 95

About Avalaunch, 204

Language Settings, 203

Main Options, 198-200

Network Settings, 196-198

Quickstart, 204

Skin Settings, 201-202

Sound Settings, 202

Update Dashboard, 204

Shutdown option, 205

Telnet Client, 194-195

website, 1 79

XBox Media Player, 187

avalaunch.xml file, T79



## B

backing up EEPROM, 142

Backup EEprorn command {Xenium EEprorn Tools), 142

## BIOS

Avalaunch Dash, 180-181

EvoX BIOS

custom BIOS, 165-166

installation, 160-163

fan speed, 290

version numbers, 63-64

XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 209-211

BitTorrem, 159

Boot Options screen (Avalaunch Dash), 200

booting up solderless mod chips, 96

browsing

music library, 221

My Files (XBMC),

215-217

bulbs (cold cathode), removing, 279

buses, FSBs (front-side buses), 25

cables

controller port cables, 48-49

IDE cables, 264

power cables, 264-265

removing

DVD-ROM drives, 38

hard drives, 33

case fans. See fans

cases {Xbox}, 21

aftermarket case assembly, 252

controller port assemblies, 256

drives, 258

front button assembly, 253-254

## Dashboards

303

front panels, 255

motherboards, 256

power supply, 256

disassembling, 233-234

controller port assemblies, 238

DVD-ROM tray panel, 245-246

front button assembly, 240-242

power supply, 238-240

quick disassembly, 234-236

Halo system jewels, 258

opening

lifting case, 29

main deck, 30-31

rubber feet, removing, 26

screws, removing, 26, 29

stock case assembly

controller port assemblies, 246-248

DVD-ROM tray panels, 251

motherboards, 248-249

power supply, 246

CDs

listening to, 221 ripping, 223

central processing units

(CPUs), 24

chips. See mod chips; video chips

cold cathode lights, 277-279, 286

mounting below jewel case, 279-281

removing bulbs from, 279

controller port assemblies

installing, 246-248, 256

removing, 238

cooling, 289

active cooling, 292-294

airflow, 294

fan installation, 295

fan placement, 294-295

fan speed

controlling in BIOS, 290

controlling in XBMC, 291-292

Copy Partition command (Xenium Disk Tools), 136 137

copying

files, 192-193

partitions, 1 36-137

copyrights

DMCA (Digital Millennium Copyright Act), 74-75

licenses, 70-73

compared to ownership, 72

definition of, 71

user rights, 72-73

cosmetic lighting modifications, 2 75 277

cold cathode lights, 277-281, 286

LEDs, 281-287

UV lights, 286

CPUs {central processing units), 24

Create Thumbs option (XBMC My Pictures), 218

Crystal Pack, 64-65

custom BIOS

Avalaunch, 180-181

EvoX, 165-166

XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 209-211

custom EvoX skins, 173-176

Dashboards

Avalaunch Dash

acquiring, 179

adding to Launch menu, 181-185

Applications menu, 191

custom BIOS, 180-181

Emulators menu, 191

File Manager, 191-193

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@sampublishing.com](mailto:indexes@sampublishing.com)

304

Dashboards

Games menu, 187-191

installation, 179-185

IRC Client, 194

Reboot option, 204

Settings screen, 195-204

Shutdown option, 205

Telnet Client, 194-195

website, 179

XBox Media Player, 187

EvoX

acquiring, 1 59

BIOS installation, 160-163

custom BIOS, 165-166

definition of, 1 57-1 58

evox.ini settings file, 167-168

installing, 158-160

Launch DVD option, 168-169

Launch menu, 1 72

MS Dashboard option, 169

Power Off option, 169

Reboot option, 1 69

skins, 173-176

System Utils menu, 170-171

Trainers option, 1 69

XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 207-208

adding to Launch menu, 210

BIOS, 209-211

installing, 208-21 1

My Files, 215-217

My Music, 221-223

My Pictures, 217-220

My Programs, 212-214

My Videos, 224-225

Settings, 229

Weather, 226-228

dates (manufacturing dates), 60-61

default.xbe file, 179

development of Xbox, 7 14

bridging PC/console gap, 1 3

lessons learned, 10-1 1

market timing, 1 2

Microsoft's dedication to developers, 12-14

pirated games, 1 5-16

potential of Xbox, 1 5-18

Sega Dreamcast, 11-12

success of Xbox, 14-15

video game competition, 9-10

Digital Millennium Copyright Act (DMCA),

74-75

disassembling Xbox, 19

cases, 21, 26-31, 233-234

controller port assemblies, 238

DVD-ROM tray panel, 245-246

front button assembly, 240-242

lifting case, 29

main deck, 30-31

power supply, 238-240

quick disassembly, 234-236

rubber feet, 26

screws, 26, 29

CPUs (central processing units), 24

DVD-ROM drives, 22

cables, 38

lifting out DVD-ROM drive and tray, 39-42

screws, 38

FSBs (front-side buses), 25



CPUs (graphics processing units), 25

hard drives, 24, 32

cables, 33

lifting hard drive tray, 35-38

screws, 33

EvoX

305

MCPs (media control processors), 25

motherboards, 22, 43-44, 99, 102

case fans, 52

controller port cables, 48-49

DVD-ROM power connectors, 44

IDE cables, 44

lifting motherboard from case, 52-54

power supply connectors, 46

screws, 48-49

power supply, 22

Xbox versions, 1 9-20

Disk Tools (Xenium)

Copy Partition, 136-137

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 135-136

Format Partition, 138-139

Lock/Unlock Hard Drive, 134

DMCA (Digital Millennium Copyright Act), 74-75

DMS Technologies' XBIT mod chips, 79

DO points, 88

1.0-1.1 motherboards, 89

1.2-1.6 motherboards, 89

troubleshooting, 1 25

DO wires, installing, 113 115

Download Saved Game command (Avalaunch Games menu), 189

downloading saved games, 189

Dreamcast, 11-12

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 135 136

drive formatting, 271

running, 267-271

drives

DVD-ROM drives, 22

removing, 38-42

tray panels, 245-246, 251

hard drives, 24

copying partitions, 136-137

formatting, 138-139, 271

locking/unlocking, 134

removing, 32-38

replacing, 259-274

upgrading, 1 35-1 36

DVD-ROM drives, 22

removing

cables, 38

lifting out DVD-ROM drive and tray, 39-42

screws, 38

tray panels

installing, 251

removing, 245-246

Edit XBE Title command (Avalaunch Games menu), 188

editing game titles. 188 189

EEPROM (electrically erasable programmable read only memory),  
60, 140

backing up, 142

restoring, 1 43-144

EEprom Tools (Xenium), 140 142

Backup EEprom, 1 42

Restore EEprom, 143-144

electrically erasable programmable read-only memory. See EEprom

Emulators menu (Avalaunch Dash), 191

EvoX

acquiring, 1 59

BIOS installation, 160-163

custom BIOS, 165-166

definition of, 157-1 58

evox.ini settings file, 167-168

EvoX Skin Creator, 1 74

installing, 1 58-160

Launch DVD option, 168-169

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@sampublishing.com](mailto:indexes@sampublishing.com)

306

EvoX

Launch menu, 1 72

MS Dashboard option, 169

Power Off option, 169

Reboot option, 1 69

skins, 173-176

System Utils menu, 170-171

Trainers option, 1 69

EvoX Skin Creator, 1 74

evox/ini file, 167-168

evoxdash.xbe file, 159

fans

installation, 295

placement, 294-295

removing, 52

speed

controlling in BIOS, 290

controlling in XBMC, 291-292

File Manager (Avalaunch Dash), 191 193

files

avalaunch.xml, 1 79 browsing, 21 5-21 7 copying, 1 92-1 93

default, xbe, 179 evox.ini, 167-168 evoxdash.xbe, 1 59

M8.BIN, 160

M8\_16.BIN, 160

XboxMediaCenter.xml, 209

Format Partition command (Xenium Disk Tools), 138 139

formatting

hard drives, 271 partitions, 138-139 front button assembly

installing, 253-254

removing, 240-242

front panels, attaching to cases, 255

FSBs (front-side buses), 25

FTP Settings (Xenium), 149151

games

homebrew games, 76

installing, 189, 191

pirated games, 1 5-1 6

properties, 189

saved games, downloading, 1 89

titles, editing, 188-189

Games extras screen (Avalaunch Dash), 200

Games nteitll (Avalaunch Dash), 187 188

game installation, 1 89, 191

game properties, viewing, 189

game titles, editing, 188-189

saved games, downloading, 189

GPUs (graphics processing units), 25

graphics processing units (GPUs), 25

H

hacking BIOS

Avalaunch Dash, 180-181

EvoX, 1 66

XBMC(Xbox Media Center), 209-211

Halo Special Edition, 20, 64 65

hard drives, 24

cooling, 292-294 airflow, 294 fan installation, 295 fan placement,  
294-295

hardware

307

copying partitions, 136-137

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 135-136

formatting, 138-139, 271

locking/unlocking, 1 34

removing, 32

cables, 33

lifting hard drive tray, 35-38

screws, 33

replacing, 259-260

drive formatting, 271

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 267-271

IDE cables, 264

master/slave settings, 262-263

power cables, 264-265

- replacement hard drives, 261
- stock hard drives, 260
- verifying replacement, 273-274
- Harddisk Tools screen (Avalaunch Dash), 199
- hardware, 19
  - cases, 21
    - aftermarket case assembly, 252-258
    - disassembling, 233-246
    - Halo system jewels, 258
    - opening, 26-31
    - stock case assembly, 246-251
  - controller port assemblies, 238, 246-248, 256
  - cooling
    - active cooling, 292-295
    - software cooling solutions, 289-292
  - CPUs (central processing units), 24
  - DVD-ROM drives, 22
    - removing, 38-42
  - tray panels, 245-246, 251
  - FSBs (front-side buses), 25
  - CPUs (graphics processing units), 25
  - hard drives, 24



copying partitions, 136-137

formatting, 138-139, 271

locking/unlocking, 134

removing, 32-38

replacing, 259-274

upgrading, 1 35-1 36

jewel case, 279-286

lighting, 275-277

cold cathode lights, 277-286

LEDs, 281-287

UV lights, 286

MCPs (media control processors), 25

mod chips. See mod chips

motherboards, 22

DO points, 88-89

installing, 248-249, 256

LPC ports, 85-88

removing, 43-54, 99, 102

power supply, 22 installing, 246, 256 removing, 238-240

revisions, 19-20, 81

1.0, 57

1.1, 57

1.2, 58

1.3, 58

1.4, 58

1.5, 59

1.6, 59, 115-116, 120-123

exceptions, 65

Halo Special Edition, 20, 64-65

identifying, 60-64

Limited Edition Crystal Pack, 64-65

serial numbers, 61-62

video chips, 62

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@sampublishing.com](mailto:indexes@sampublishing.com)

308

Hardware Info screen

Hardware Info screen (AvalauncK Dash), 198

heat damage. See cooling

history of Xbox, 7 14

bridging PC/console gap, 1 3

lessons learned, 10-1 1

market timing, 1 2

Microsoft's dedication to developers, 1 2-14

pirated games, 1 5-16

potential of Xbox, 1 5-18

Sega Dreamcast, 11-12

success of Xbox, 14-1 5

video game competition, 9-10

IDE cables, 264

Identifying Xbox revisions

BIOS version numbers, 63-64

exceptions, 65

Halo Special Edition, 64-65

hardware serial numbers, 61-62

Limited Edition Crystal Pack, 64-65

manufacturing dates, 60-61

video chip verification, 62

installation

aftermarket cases, 252

controller port assemblies, 256

drives, 258

front button assembly, 253-254

front panels, 255

motherboards, 256

power supply, 256

Avalaunch Dash, 179-181

custom BIOS, 180-181

files, copying to Xbox, 181

Launch menu, adding Avalaunch to, 181-185

cooling fans, 295

DO wires, 113-115

EvoX, 158-163

hard drives

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 267-271

IDE cables, 264

master/slave settings, 262-263

power cables, 264-265

verifying upgrade process, 273-274

games, 189-191

motherboards, 248-249

pin headers, 1 03

inserting headers, 107

locating LPCs, 105

preparing to solder, 104-105

removing pin 4, 1 07

soldering pins, 110-113

power supply, 246

soldered mod chip installation, 81

DO wires, 113-115

motherboard removal, 99, 102

pin headers, 103-113

troubleshooting, 125-126

Xbox revision 1.6 motherboards, 115-116, 120-123

solderless mod chip installation, 81-85

boot-up process, 96

DO points, 88-89

LPC ports, 85-88

mod chips, attaching to adapters, 94

solderless adapters, 89-93

stock cases

controller port assemblies, 246-248

DVD-ROM tray panels, 251

motherboards, 248-249

power supply, 246

main menus

309

XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 208-211

BIOS, 209-211

XBMC files, 209

IRC Client (Avalaunch Dash), 194

JL

jewel cases, mounting cold cathode lights below, 279 286

Language Settings ^Avalaunch Dash), 203

Launch DVD option (EvoX), 168-169

Launch menu, 131-134, 172

adding Avalaunch Dash to, 181-185

adding XBMC (Xbox Media Center) to, 210

LEDs, 281-287

legal issues

DMCA (Digital Millennium Copyright Act), 74-75

licenses, 70-73

compared to ownership, 72

definition of, 71

user rights, 72-73

LFRAME wires

installing, 1 23

troubleshooting, 125

licenses, 70-73

compared to ownership, 72

definition of, 71

user rights, 72-73

lighting, 275-277

cold cathode lights, 277-279, 286

bulbs, removing, 279

mounting below jewel case, 279-281

LEDs, 281-287

UV lights, 286

Limited Edition Crystal Pack, 64-65

listening to audio CDs,

221

Lock/Unlock Hard Drive commands; (Xenitim Disk Tools), 134

locking hard drives, 134

LPC ports, 85 86

1.0-1.1 motherboards, 86

1.2-1.6 motherboards, 87

pre-soldered LPCs, 87-88

rebuilding, 116, 120-122

wire 1, 117

wire 2, 117

wire 3, 1 20

wire 4, 1 21

wire 5, 1 22 troubleshooting, 1 25

## M

M8.BIN file, 160 M8\_16.BIN file, 160 main deck, 30-31 main menus

Avalaunch Dash, 1 86

Applications menu, 191

Emulators menu, 1 91

File Manager, 191-193

Games menu, 187-191

IRC Client, 194

Reboot option, 204

Settings screen, 195-204

Shutdown option, 205

Telnet Client, 194-195

XBox Media Player, 187

XBMC, 212

My Files, 215-217

My Music, 221-223

My Pictures, 217-220

My Programs, 212-214

My Videos, 224-225

Settings, 229

Weather, 226-228



How can we make this index more useful? Email us at [indexes@samspubiishing.com](mailto:indexes@samspubiishing.com)

310

main menus

Xenium, 1 30

Disk Tools, 134-139

EEprom Tools, 140-144

Launch menu, 131-134, 181-185, 210

Power Off, 155

Reboot, 155

Recovery, 1 55

Settings, 144-155

Main Options (Avalaunch Dash), 198 200

manufacturing dates, 60 61

master/slave settings, 262263

MCPs (media control processors), 25

Media Center. See XBMC (Xbox Media Center)

media control processors (MCPs), 25

memory, EEPROM (electrically erasable programmable readonly memory), 60, 140

backing up, 142

restoring, 1 43-1 44

Misc Info screen (Avalaunch Dash), 198

mod chips, 77-78. See also Xenium operating system

Aladdin, 80

capabilities, 73-75

copyrights and legal issues

DMCA (Digital Millennium Copyright Act), 74-75

licenses, 70-73

definition of, 69-70

homebrew games, 76

how they work, 70

SmartXX, 79

soldered mod chip installation, 81

DO wires, 113-115

motherboard removal, 99, 102

pin header installation, 103-113

troubleshooting, 125-126

Xbox revision 1.6 motherboards, 115-116, 120-123

solderless mod chip installation, 81-85

boot-up process, 96

DO points, 88-89

LPC ports, 85-88

mod chips, attaching to adapters, 94

- solderless adapters, 89-93
- X-Chip, 80
- XBIT, 79
- XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 75-76
- Xecutor, 78-79
- Xenium, 78
- motherboards, 22
  - DO points, 88-89
  - installing, 248-249, 256
  - LPC ports, 85-86
  - 1.0-1.1 motherboards, 86
  - 1.2-1.6 motherboards, 87
  - pre-soldered LPCs, 87-88
  - troubleshooting, 1 25
  - removing, 43-44, 99, 102
  - case fans, 52
  - controller port cables, 48-49
  - DVD-ROM power connectors, 44
  - IDE cables, 44
  - lifting motherboard from case, 52-54
  - power supply connectors, 46
  - screws, 48-49

MS Dashboard option (EvoX), 169

MSX, 9

properties of games

31

My Files (XBMC), 215 217

My Music (XBMC), 221-223

audio CDs

listening to, 221 ripping, 223

music library, 221

settings, 223

visualizations, 223

My Pictures (XBMC), 217 220

My Programs (XBMC), 212 214

My Videos (XBMC), 224-225

N

Network Settings

Avalaunch Dash, 196-198

Xenium, 146-149

numbers

BIOS version numbers, 63-64

hardware serial numbers, 61-62

manufacturing dates, 60-61

On-Screen Display (OSD), 225

opening Xbox cases, 2631

lifting case, 29

main deck, 30-31

removing rubber feet, 26

removing screws, 26, 29

OSD (On-Screen Display),  
225 overheating. See cooling

partitions

copying, 1 36-1 37

formatting, 1 38-1 39

pin header installation, 103

inserting headers, 107

locating LPCs, 105

preparing to solder, 104-105

removing pin 4, 1 07

soldering pins, 110-113

pirated games, 15-16

playing videos, 224-225

PlayStation, 9

ports

controller port assemblies

installing, 246-248, 256

removing, 238

LPC ports, 85-86

1.0-1.1 motherboards, 86

1.2-1.6 motherboards, 87

pre-soldered LPCs, 87-88

rebuilding, 116, 120-122

troubleshooting, 125

power cables, 264-265

Power Off option

EvoX, 169

Xenium, 155

power supply, 22

connectors, removing, 46

installing, 246, 256

removing, 238-240

powering off, 155

pre soldered LPC ports, 87-88

preparing to solder, 104-105

programs. See software

Properties command (Avalaunch Games menu), 189

properties of games, viewing, 139

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@sampublishing.com](mailto:indexes@sampublishing.com)

312

quicksoldering

QR

qmcksoldering, 103

Quickstart (Avalaunch Dash), 204

Reboot option

Avalaunch Dash, 204 EvoX, 169 Xenium, 155 rebuilding LPC ports,  
116 122

wire 1, 117

wire 2, 117

wire 3, 120

wire 4, 121

wire 5, 122

Recovery option (Xenium), 155

removing

cases, 233-234

controller port assemblies, 238

DVD-ROM tray panel, 245-246

front button assembly, 240-242

power supply, 238-240

quick disassembly, 234-236

cold cathode bulbs, 279

DVD-ROM drives

cables, 38

lifting out DVD-ROM drive and tray, 39-42

screws, 38

hard drives, 32

cables, 33

lifting hard drive tray, 35-38

screws, 33

motherboards, 43-44, 99, 102

case fans, 52

controller port cables, 48-49

DVD-ROM power connectors, 44

IDE cables, 44

lifting motherboard from case, 52-54

power supply connectors, 46

screws, 48-49

Xbox covers

lifting case, 29

main deck, 30-31



rubber feet, 26

screws, 26, 29

replacing hard drives, 259-260

drive formatting, 271

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 267-271

IDE cables, 264

master/slave settings, 262-263

power cables, 264-265

replacement hard drives, 261

stock hard drives, 260

verifying replacement, 273-274

Restore EEprom command (Xenium EEprom Tools), 143 144

restoring EEPROM, 143-144

Reverse Slides how feature (XBMC My Pictures), 220

revisions, 81

1.0, 57

1.1, 57

1.2, 58

1.3, 58

1.4, 58

1.5, 59

1.6, 59

software

313

exceptions, 65

Halo Special Edition, 64-65

identifying

BIOS version numbers, 63-64

hardware serial numbers, 61-62

manufacturing dates, 60-61

video chip verification, 62

Limited Edition Crystal Pack, 64-65

ripping CDs, 223

rosin flux, 112

saved games, downloading, 189

screws

case screws, 26, 29

DVD-ROM drive screws, 38

hard drive screws, 33

motherboard screws, 48-49

Sega Dreamcast, 11-12 serial numbers, 61 62 Settings menu

Avalaunch Dash, 195

About Avalaunch, 204

Language Settings, 203

Main Options, 198-200

Network Settings, 196-198

Quickstart, 204

Skin Settings, 201-202

Sound Settings, 202

Update Dashboard, 204

XBMC, 229

Xeniumr 144

FTP Settings, 149-151

Network Settings, 146-149

SMB Settings, 152-155

Telnet Settings, 151-152

Xenium Settings, 145

Shutdown option (Avalaunch Dash), 205

Skin menu (EvoX), 173 176

Skin Settings (Avalaunch Dash), 201 202

skins (EvoX), 173-176

Slideshow feature (XBMC My Pictures), 220

SmartXX mod chips, 79

SMB Settings (Xenium), 152 155

software. See also Xenium operating system

Avalaunch Dash

acquiring, 1 79

adding to Launch menu, 181-185

Applications menu, 191

custom BIOS, 180-181

Emulators menu, 1 91

File Manager, 191-193

Games menu, 187-191

installation, 179-185

IRC Client, 194

Reboot option, 204

Settings screen, 195-204

Shutdown option, 205

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@samspublishing.com](mailto:indexes@samspublishing.com)

314

software

Telnet Client, 194-195

website, 1 79

XBox Media Player, 187

controlling fan speed with, 289

BIOS, 290

XBMC, 291-292

EvoX

acquiring, 1 59

BIOS installation, 160-163

custom BIOS, 165-166

definition of, 157-1 58

evox.ini settings file, 167-168

installing, 158-160

Launch DVD option, 168-169

Launch menu, 1 72

MS Dashboard option, 169

Power Off option, 169

Reboot option, 169

skins, 173-176

System Utils menu, 170-171

Trainers option, 169

EvoX Skin Creator, 1 74

running with File Manager, 192

XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 207-208

adding to Launch menu, 210

BIOS, 209-211

installing, 208-21 1

My Files, 215-217

My Music, 221-223

My Pictures, 217-220

My Programs, 212-214

My Videos, 224-225

Settings, 229

Weather, 226-228

XBtool, 180, 273

soldered mod chip installation, 81

DO wires, 113-115

motherboard removal, 99, 102

pin header installation, 103-113

troubleshooting, 125-126

Xbox revision 1.6 motherboards

LFRAME wires, 123

LPCs, rebuilding, 1 16, 120-122

pin header installation, 116

version-checking, 11 5

soldering irons, 111

solderless adapters, 8993

solderless mod chip installation, 81-85

- boot-up process, 96
- DO points, 88-89
- LPC ports, 85-86
- 1.0-1.1 motherboards, 86
- 1.2-1.6 motherboards, 87
- pre-soldered LPCs, 87-88
- mod chips, attaching to adapters, 94
- solderless adapters, 89-93
- Sound Settings (AvaUunch Dash), 202
- special editions
  - Halo Special Edition, 20, 64-65
  - Limited Edition Crystal Pack, 64-65
- speed of fan, controlling
- BIOS, 290 XBMC, 291-292 stock cases
- assembling
  - controller port assemblies, 246-248
- DVD-ROM tray panels, 251
- visualizations

315

- motherboards, 248-249
- power supply, 246

- disassembling, 233-234
- controller port assemblies, 238
- DVD-ROM tray panel, 245-246
- front button assembly, 240-242
- power supply, 238-240
- quick disassembly, 234-236
- success of Xbox, 1 4-1 5
- surge protectors, 43
- System Utifs menu (EvoX), 170-171
- TeamXecuter's Xecutor mod chips, 78-79
- Telnet Client (Avalaunch Dash), 194-195
- Telnet Settings (Xenium),  
151-152
- temperature. See cooling thumbnails, 218-219
- titles of games, editing, 188 189
- tools (Xenium)
  - Disk Tools
    - Copy Partition, 136-137
    - Drive Upgrade Wizard, 135-136
    - Format Partition, 138-139
    - Lock/Unlock Hard Drive, 134
    - EEProm Tools, 140-142



Backup EEprom, 1 42

Restore EEprom, 143-144

Torx screws

case screws, 26, 29

DVD-ROM drive screws, 38

hard drive screws, 33

motherboard screws, 48-49

TRAINERS folder (EvoX), 169

Trainers option (EvoX), 169

troubleshooting soldered mod chip installation, 125-126

U

unlocking hard drives, 134

Update Dashboard option (Avalaunch Dash), 204

upgrading hard drives, 259-260

drive formatting, 271

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 267-271

IDE cables, 264

master/slave settings, 262-263

power cables, 264-265

replacement hard drives, 261

stock hard drives, 260

verifying upgrade process, 273-274

UV lights, 286

## V

verifying hard drive upgrades, 273-274

versions of Xbox. See revisions

video chips, 62

videos, playing, 224-225

viewing game properties, 189

visualizations (My Music), 223

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@sampublishing.com](mailto:indexes@sampublishing.com)

316

warez

## W

warez, 1 516

warranties, 29

Weather (XBMC), 226 228

WebTV, 9

wizards, Drive Upgrade Wizard, 135-136

drive formatting, 271

running, 267-271

## X-Z

X Chip mod chips, 80

XBIT mod chips, 79

XBMC (Xbox Media Center), 75 76, 207 208

adding to Launch menu, 210

BIOS, 209-211

fan speed, setting, 291-292

installing, 208-21 1

BIOS, 209-211

XBMC files, 209

My Files, 215-217

My Music, 221-223

My Pictures, 217-220

My Programs, 212-214

My Videos, 224-225

Settings, 229

Weather, 226-228

xBomberbox2, 76

Xbox development, 7-14

bridging PC/console gap, 1 3

lessons learned, 10-1 1

market timing, 12

Microsoft's dedication to developers, 12-14

pirated games, 1 5-16

potential of Xbox, 15-18

Sega Dreamcast, 11-12

success of Xbox, 14-1 5

video game competition, 9-10

Xbox hardware, 19

cases, 21

aftermarket case assembly, 252-258

disassembling, 233-246

Halo system jewels, 258

opening, 26-31

stock case assembly, 246-251

controller port assemblies, 238, 246-248, 256

cooling

active cooling, 292-295

software cooling solutions, 289-292

CPUs (central processing units), 24

DVD-ROM drives, 22

removing, 38-42

tray panels, 245-246, 251

FSBs (front-side buses), 25

GPUs (graphics processing units), 25

hard drives, 24

copying partitions, 136-137

formatting, 138-139, 271

locking/unlocking,

134

removing, 32-38 replacing, 259-274 upgrading, 135-136

jewel case, 279-286

lighting, 275-277

cold cathode lights, 277-286

LEDs, 281-287

UV lights, 286

MCPs (media control processors), 25

Xenium operating system

317

mod chips. See mod chips

motherboards, 22

DO points, 88-89

installing, 248-249, 256

LPC ports, 85-88

removing, 43-54, 99, 102

power supply, 22 installing, 246, 256 removing, 238-240

revisions, 19-20, 81

1.0, 57

1.1, 57

1.2, 58

1.3, 58

1.4, 58

1.5, 59

1.6, 59, 115-1 16, 120-123

exceptions, 65

Halo Special Edition, 20, 64-65

identifying, 60-64

Limited Edition Crystal Pack, 64-65

serial numbers, 61 -62

video chips, 62

Xbox Media Center. See XBMC

XBox Media Player (Avalaunch Dash), 187

XboxMediaCentei.xml file, 209

XBtool, 180, 273

Xecutor mod chips,

78-79

Xertium mod chip installation, 78, 83 85. See also Xenium operating system

boot-up process, 96

DO points, 88

1.0-1.1 motherboards, 89

1.2-1.6 motherboards, 89

LPC ports, 85-88

mod chips, attaching to adapters, 94

solderless adapters, 89-93

Xenium operating system, 129 130. See also Xenium mod chip installation

Disk Tools

Copy Partition, 136-137

Drive Upgrade Wizard, 135-136

Format Partition, 138-139

Lock/Unlock Hard Drive, 1 34

EEProm Tools, 140-142

Backup EEPROM, 1 42

Restore EEPROM, 143-144

Launch menu, 1 31 -1 34

adding Avalaunch Dash to, 181-185

adding XBMC (Xbox Media Center) to, 210

Power Off option, 1 55

Reboot option, 1 55

Recovery option, 1 55

Settings, 144

FTP Settings, 149-151

Network Settings, 146-149

SMB Settings, 152-155

Telnet Settings, 151-152

Xenium Settings, 1 45

How can we make this index more useful? Email us at  
[indexes@samspubiishing.com](mailto:indexes@samspubiishing.com)

Unleash the Potential of Your Xbox...

Turn your Xbox into a monster gaming rig! a media center computer, or a hub for your big-screen TV and entertainment center.

Learn how to fully customize your Xbox from both a functional and a cosmetic perspective.

Disassemble your Xbox and identify your Xbox revision.

Choose and install the right mod chip for your needs.

i Understand the after market software available for your Xbox, including tutorials showing you how to use the Xenium O/S, EvolutionX, Avalaunci, and Xbox Media Center.

i Replace the case of your Xbox, upgrade the hard drive, and install custom lighting and cooling gear.

i Modify the software to match the exotic changes you have rendered on the physical appearance and functionality of your new super Xbox.



Hundreds of photos guide you through each subject area.

The Xbox is an exciting and fun video game console— but that's only half the story. Inside the case, Microsoft placed a customized PC that you can push well past the limits of Halo and NBA Live. In *The Black Art of Xbox Mods*, gamer, programmer, and midnight hacker Jonathan Harbour shows you how to crack the case, strip your Xbox down to the motherboards and take control from the inside out.

When you're finished, you'll know how to install a mod chip, boot up in a new operating system, and run cool third-party software. You'll also learn how to trick out your Xbox with case mods, glowing lights, and other features to let the world know your Xbox has come a long way since you brought it home from the superstore

With hundreds of pictures and step-by-step instructions *The Black Art of Xbox Mods* isn't for the faint of heart. But, if you want a 300GB Xbox that plays CDs, DVDs, and glows like an alien spacecraft, then this is the book for you.

Jonathan S. Harbour has been an avid gamer and programmer for 17 years, having started with early systems such as the Commodore PET, Apple II, and Tandy 1000. The first console he disassembled and tried to hack was the Atari 2600. He holds a degree in computer information systems and enjoys writing code in several languages. Jonathan has experience with several platforms, including Windows, Linux, Pocket PC, and Game Boy Advance. Jonathan has written nine books on the subjects of game programming, application development, console programming, cross-platform programming, and console modeling. He maintains a website dedicated to these subjects at <http://www.jharhour.com>.

[www.5amspublisKing.com](http://www.5amspublisKing.com)

CATEGORY: Computers/General

Covers: Hardware mods

ISBN 0-672-32683-3

780672n32683

52499

\$24.99 USA / \$35.99 CAN / £1 7.99 Net UK